

OXFORD

# American English File

Starter

Third Edition



دهخدا

موسسه زبان دهخدا  
dekhodaedu.com

Christina Latham-Koenig  
Clive Oxenden  
Jerry Lambert

dekhodaedu.com

	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
<b>7</b>			
42 <b>A</b> Have a nice weekend!	word order in questions: <i>be</i> and simple present	common verb phrases 2: free time	/w/, /h/, /ɛr/, and /aʊ/
44 <b>B</b> Lights, camera, action!	imperatives, object pronouns: <i>me, him, etc.</i>	kinds of movies	sentence rhythm
46 <b>Practical English</b> Episode 4	saying the date, talking on the phone	v months, ordinal numbers	p /θ/
<b>8</b>			
48 <b>A</b> Can I park here?	<i>can / can't</i>	more verb phrases	<i>can / can't</i> : /æ/, and /ə/, sentence rhythm
50 <b>B</b> I ♥ cooking	<i>like / love / hate + verb + -ing</i>	activities	/ʊ/, /u/, and /ɪŋ/, sentence rhythm
52 <b>Review and Check</b> 7&8			
<b>9</b>			
54 <b>A</b> Everything's fine!	present continuous	common verb phrases 2: traveling	sentence rhythm
56 <b>B</b> Working undercover	present continuous or simple present?	clothes	/ɜr/, other vowel sounds
58 <b>Practical English</b> Episode 5	inviting and offering	p sentence rhythm	
<b>10</b>			
60 <b>A</b> A room with a view	<i>there's a... / there are some...</i>	hotels, <i>in, on, under</i>	/ɪr/ and /ɜr/
62 <b>B</b> Where were you?	simple past: <i>be</i>	<i>in, on, at</i>	<i>was</i> and <i>were</i> , sentence rhythm
64 <b>Review and Check</b> 9&10			
<b>11</b>			
66 <b>A</b> A new life in the US	simple past: regular verbs	regular verbs	regular simple past endings
68 <b>B</b> How was your day?	simple past irregular verbs: <i>get, go, have, do</i>	verb phrases with <i>get, go, have, do</i>	sentence rhythm
70 <b>Practical English</b> Episode 6	asking for and giving directions	v prepositions of place	p sentence rhythm and polite intonation
<b>12</b>			
72 <b>A</b> Strangers on a train	simple past: regular and irregular verbs	regular and irregular verbs	irregular verbs
74 <b>B</b> Review the past	simple past review	review of past verb forms	review of vowel sounds
76 <b>Review and Check</b> 11&12			

78 **Communication**  
 86 **Writing**  
 88 **Listening**

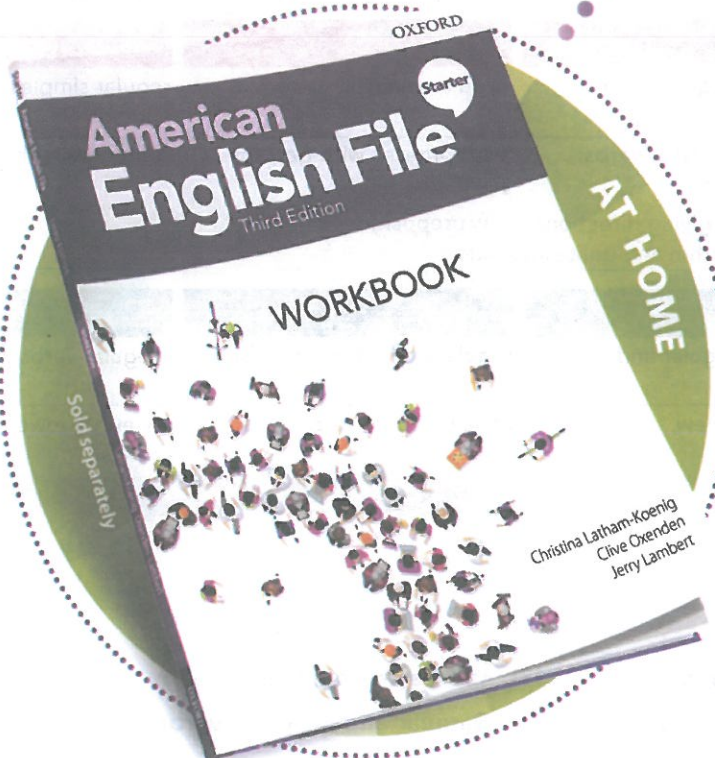
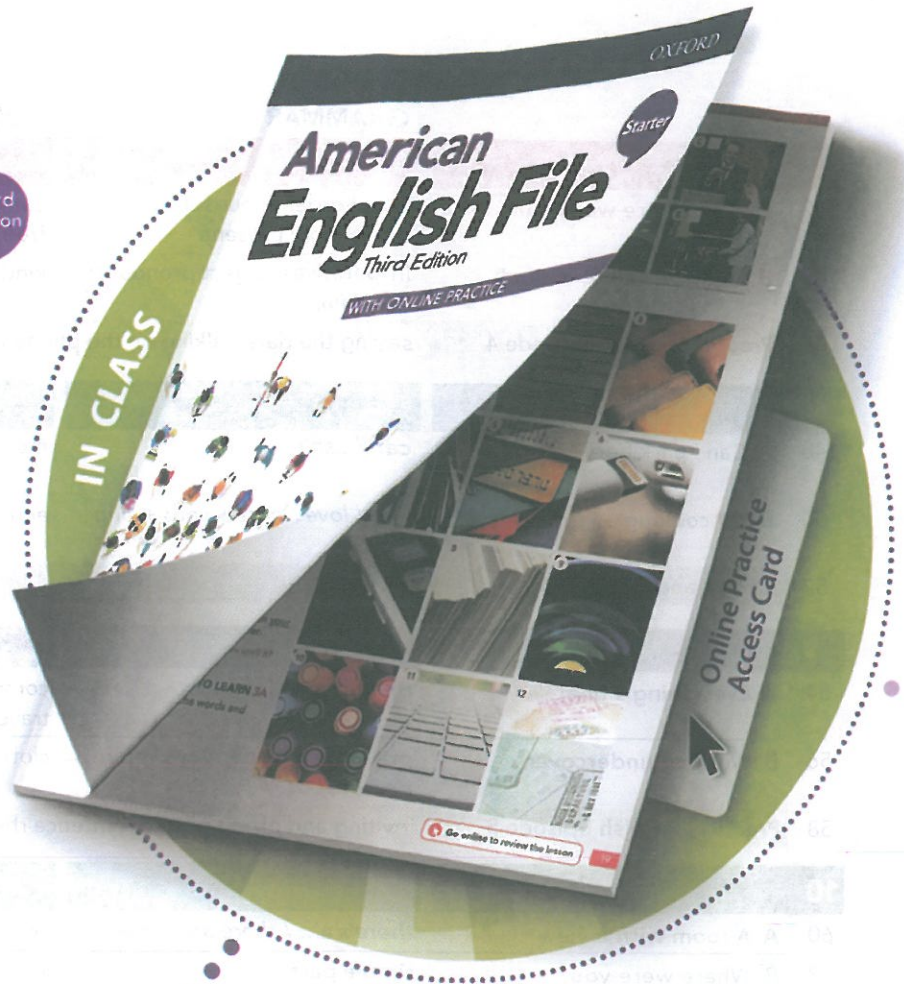
92 **Grammar Bank**  
 116 **Vocabulary Bank**

131 **Words and phrases to learn**  
 133 **Regular and irregular verbs**  
 134 **Sound Bank**

## Course overview

# American English File Third Edition

Welcome to **American English File Third Edition**. This is how to use the Student Book, Online Practice, and the Workbook in and out of class.



### Student Book

All the language and skills you need to improve your English, with Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills work in every File.

**Use your Student Book in class with your teacher.**

### Workbook

Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation practice for every lesson.

**Use your Workbook for homework or for self-study to practice language and to check your progress.**

ACTIVITIES AUDIO VIDEO RESOURCES



ONLINE



## Online Practice

**Look again** at Student Book language you want to review or that you missed in class, do extra **Practice** activities, and **Check your progress** on what you learned so far.

Use the **Online Practice** to learn outside the classroom and get instant feedback on your progress.

Go to  
[americanenglishfileonline.com](http://americanenglishfileonline.com)  
and use the code on  
your Access Card to  
log into the Online  
Practice.



### LOOK AGAIN

- Review the language from every lesson.
- Watch the video and listen to all the class audio as many times as you like.

### PRACTICE

- Improve your skills with extra Reading, Writing, Listening, and Speaking practice.
- Use the interactive video to practice Practical English.

### CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- Test yourself on the language from the File and get instant feedback.
- Try a Challenge activity.

### SOUND BANK

- Use the Sound Bank video to practice and improve your pronunciation of English sounds.

# 1A

## A cappuccino, please

Hi, I'm Helen.  
Hello, I'm Tom. Nice to meet you.

**G** verb be (singular): I and you    **V** numbers 0–10, days of the week, saying goodbye    **P** /h/, /a/, and /i/

### 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a **1.2** Read and listen.



**1**

Helen A cappuccino, please.  
Barista 1 What's your name?  
Helen Helen.  
Barista 1 Ellen?  
Helen No, Helen.  
Barista 1 Helen. OK.



**2**

Barista 2 Are you Diana?  
Helen No, I'm not. I'm Helen.  
Barista 2 Sorry.  
Helen? Your cappuccino.  
Helen Thanks.



**3**

Tom Hello. Are you Helen?  
Helen Yes, I am. And you're Tom.  
Tom Yes! Nice to meet you.  
Helen Nice to meet you.  
Tom Just a minute.



**4**

Tom Hi. A tea, please.  
Barista 1 What's your name?  
Tom Tom.  
Barista 1 Dom. A tea.  
Tom No, I'm Tom, not Dom.

b **1.3** Listen and repeat the conversations.

c In pairs, practice the conversations.

### 2 GRAMMAR verb be (singular): I and you

a Write I or You in photos 1 and 2.

b **p.92 Grammar Bank 1A**

c **1.6** Listen and say the contractions.

1 **I am** (I'm)



**1** \_\_\_\_\_ 'm Helen.

**2** \_\_\_\_\_ 're Tom.

### 3 VOCABULARY numbers 0–10

a **1.7** Listen and check (✓) the correct photo.



b **v.p.116 Vocabulary Bank Numbers** Do Part 1.

c **1.9** Listen and write the numbers.

7

d **1.10** Listen and say the next number.

) one, two (three

### 4 PRONUNCIATION

/h/, /aɪ/, and /i/

a **1.11** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

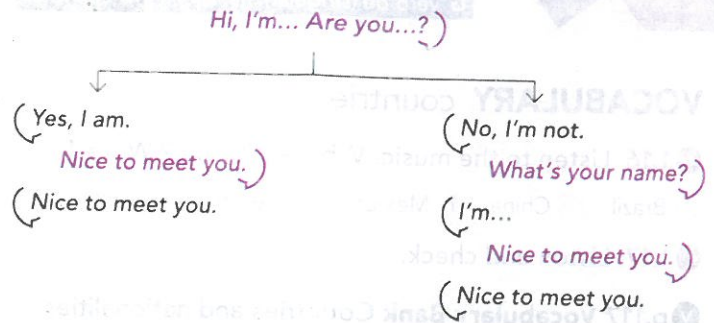
	house	hi hello Helen
	bike	I'm nice five nine
	tree	meet three tea please

b **1.12** Listen and repeat the sentences.

Hello, Helen!  
Hi, I'm Mike.  
Three teas, please.

### 5 SPEAKING

Practice with other students.



### 6 VOCABULARY

days of the week, saying goodbye

a **1.13** Listen and repeat the days of the week.

Monday /'mʌndeɪ/
Tuesday /'tuzdeɪ/
Wednesday /'wenzdeɪ/
Thursday /'θɜːzdeɪ/
Friday /'fraɪdeɪ/
Saturday /'sætədeɪ/
Sunday /'sʌndeɪ/

**Capital letters**  
Monday **NOT** monday  
Friday **NOT** friday

b Write the days of the week.

today = \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow = \_\_\_\_\_  
the weekend = \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_

c Cover a and say the days from Monday to Sunday. What days are your English classes?

d **1.14** Listen and repeat.



e Say goodbye. (Bye. See you tomorrow.)

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 1A

**p.131** Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

**Go online** to review the lesson

# 1B

## World music

Where's he from?




He's from Brazil.

**G** verb be (singular): he, she, it   **V** countries   **P** /i/, /ou/, /s/, and /ʃ/

### 1 VOCABULARY countries

- a **1.16** Listen to the music. Where's it from? Write 1–5.  
 Brazil    China    1 Mexico    the US    Turkey
- b **1.17** Listen and check.
- c **p.117 Vocabulary Bank Countries and nationalities**  
Do Part 1.
- d **1.19** Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm.
- A Where are you from?  
 B I'm from Lima.  
 A Where's Lima?  
 B It's in Peru.
- e Practice the conversation with your city and country.
- f **Communication** Where is it? **A p.78 B p.82** Ask and answer questions about cities and countries.

### 2 GRAMMAR verb be (singular): he, she, it

- a **1.20** Listen to the conversation. Write the countries.
- A Wow! Caetano Veloso!  
 B Where's he from?  
 A He's from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B Is Lila Downs from \_\_\_\_\_, too?  
 A No, she isn't. She's from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 B Is she good?  
 A Yes, she is. Very good.
- b **1.21** Listen again and repeat.
- c In pairs, practice the conversation.
- d Match the words with the photos.
- she    it    he
-   
- e Complete the chart for be (singular).

+	I am = I'm you are = you're he is = he _____ she is = she _____ it is = it _____	-	I am not = I'm not you are not = you aren't he is not = he _____ she is not = she _____ it is not = it _____
---	--	---	--

- f **p.92 Grammar Bank 1B**

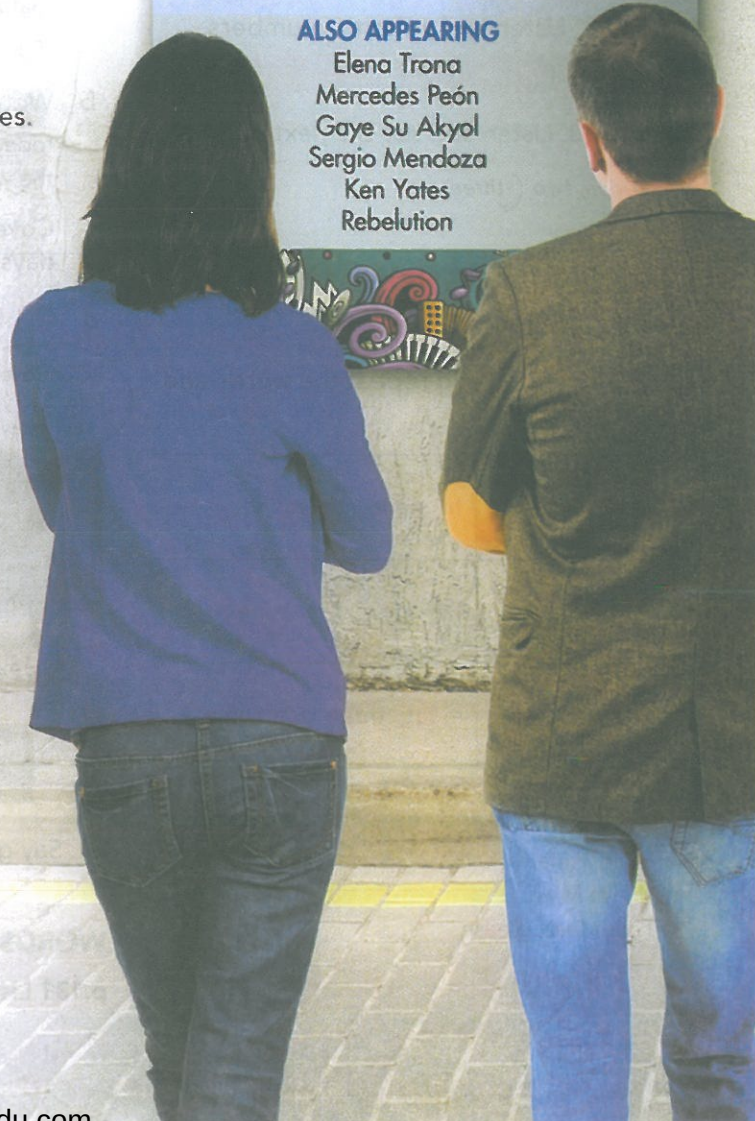


June 18–19

## WORLD MUSIC FESTIVAL

**FRIDAY 18** Caetano Veloso   **SATURDAY 19** Lila Downs

**ALSO APPEARING**  
 Elena Trona  
 Mercedes Peón  
 Gaye Su Akyol  
 Sergio Mendoza  
 Ken Yates  
 Rebelution



### 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɪ/, /oʊ/, /s/, and /ʃ/

a 1.25 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	fish	it six isn't Brazil England
	phone	no don't photo Mexico know
	snake	say seven city nice
	shower	she English

b 1.26 Listen and repeat the sentences.

It's six in Mexico.                      It's a nice city.  
I don't know.                              She speaks English.

### 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a 1.27 Listen to the difference between *he* and *she*.

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 a Is <b>he</b> from Vietnam? | b Is <b>she</b> from Vietnam? |
| 2 a <b>He's</b> from Turkey.   | b <b>She's</b> from Turkey.   |
| 3 a Where's <b>he</b> from?    | b Where's <b>she</b> from?    |
| 4 a <b>He's</b> nice.          | b <b>She's</b> nice.          |
| 5 a Where is <b>he</b> ?       | b Where is <b>she</b> ?       |

b Practice saying sentences a and b.

c 1.28 Listen and check (✓) the sentence you hear in a.

d 1.29 Listen and write six sentences or questions.

1 *He's from Vietnam.*

e Look at the photos. Ask and answer questions with a partner about the artists or instruments.

*Where's he from?* ( *He's from the US.*

*Where's she from?* ( *She's from Turkey.*

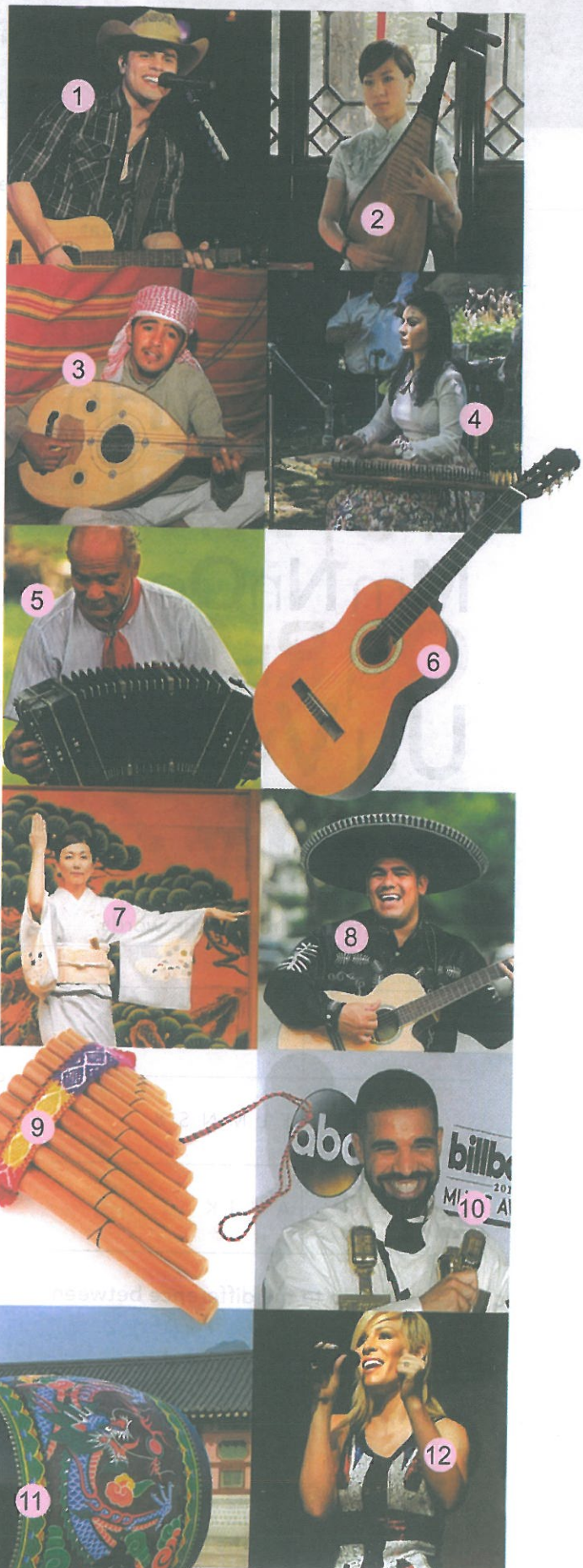
*Where's it from?* ( *It's from China.*

f 1.30 Listen and check.

g Test your partner. Point to a photo and ask a question with *Is he / she / it from...?*

*Number two. Is she from Japan?*

( *No, she isn't. She's from China.*



### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 1B

p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

Go online to review the lesson



checking into hotel, booking a table

V the classroom




P the alphabet

1 THE ALPHABET

a 1.32 Listen to the alphabet. Repeat the letters.



b 1.33 Listen and repeat the words, sounds, and letters.

 tree	B C D E G P T V Z
 egg	F L M N S X
 train	A H J K

c 1.34 Listen to the difference between the letters.

- |       |        |
|-------|--------|
| 1 E A | 7 G J  |
| 2 E I | 8 K Q  |
| 3 U W | 9 M N  |
| 4 Y I | 10 S C |
| 5 B P | 11 D T |
| 6 B V | 12 W V |

d 1.35 Listen. Circle the letter you hear in c.

e 1.36 Look at the photos. How do you say the letters? Listen and check.



f Communication Hit the ships A p.78 B p.82 Play a game with numbers and letters.

2 VOCABULARY the classroom

a 1.37 Listen and complete the conversation with the words from the list.

Book English spell What

Student 1 \_\_\_\_\_'s libro in 2 \_\_\_\_\_?

Teacher 3 \_\_\_\_\_.

Student How do you 4 \_\_\_\_\_ it?

Teacher B-O-O-K.

b V p.118 Vocabulary Bank The classroom

c Complete the conversations.

- 1 Teacher \_\_\_\_\_ your books, please. \_\_\_\_\_ to page 7.  
 Student \_\_\_\_\_, can you \_\_\_\_\_ that, please?  
 Teacher Go to page 7.
- 2 Student \_\_\_\_\_ me. \_\_\_\_\_ do you spell "birthday"?  
 Teacher B-I-R-T-H-D-A-Y.
- 3 Student \_\_\_\_\_ I'm late.  
 Teacher That's OK. Sit \_\_\_\_\_, please.

d 1.40 Listen and check.

e In pairs, practice the conversations in c.

f 1.41 Listen and do the actions.

- 1 ) Stand up.

### 3 CHECKING INTO A HOTEL

a 1.42 Watch or listen to Rob. Circle a or b.

- Rob is from \_\_\_\_\_.  
a the UK  
b the US
- He's \_\_\_\_\_.  
a an artist  
b a journalist
- He's in Poland \_\_\_\_\_.  
a on vacation  
b for work



b 1.43 Watch or listen and order the sentences.



- W-A-L-K-E-R.
- My name's Rob Walker. I have a reservation.
- Sorry?
- Hello.
- How do you spell it?
- Walker.
- Sorry, what's your surname?
- Thank you. OK, Mr. Walker. You're in room 321.
- Good afternoon.
- W-A-L-K-E-R.
- Thanks.

#### Names

name	Rob Walker
first name	Rob
surname (or last name)	Walker

c 1.44 Watch or listen and repeat the conversation.

d In pairs, role-play the conversation. Use your name and last name.

#### Greetings

Good <u>morning</u>	» 12:00
Good <u>afternoon</u>	12:00 » 6:00 p.m.
Good <u>evening</u>	6:00 p.m. »

### 4 BOOKING A TABLE



a 1.45 Watch or listen to Jenny. Circle a or b.

- Jenny's from \_\_\_\_\_.  
a the US  
b the UK
- \_\_\_\_\_ is her birthday.  
a Today  
b Tomorrow
- Locanda Verde is a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a restaurant  
b club

b 1.46 Watch or listen and complete the information.

## LOCANDA VERDE

### Bookings

Day

Table for  people

Time  (o'clock)

Name

#### American and British English

*vacation* = American English  
*holiday* = British English

*last name* = American English  
*surname* = British English

Z (*zee /zi/*) = American English  
Z (*zed /zɛd/*) = British English

### 5 USEFUL PHRASES

1.47 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

I have a reservation.	Good morning.
How do you spell it?	How can I help you?
Sorry?	A table for tomorrow, please.
Thank you.	That's right.

Go online to watch the video and review the lesson

# 2A

## Are you on vacation?

Are you American?

No, we aren't. We're from Canada.

**G** verb be (plural): we, you, they **V** nationalities **P** /dʒ/, /tʃ/, and /ʃ/

### 1 VOCABULARY nationalities

a Look at the photos and circle the nationality words.






b Write the countries for each photo.

- 1 Turkey                      2 \_\_\_\_\_  
3 \_\_\_\_\_                      4 \_\_\_\_\_

c **V** p.117 Vocabulary Bank Countries and nationalities Do Part 2.

### 2 PRONUNCIATION /dʒ/, /tʃ/, and /ʃ/

a **2.2** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 <b>jazz</b>	Japan Argentina
 <b>chess</b>	Chinese Chilean
 <b>shower</b>	Spanish Turkish

**Sounds**  
The letter **j** = /dʒ/, e.g., **J**apan /dʒə'pæn/.  
The letter **g** = /dʒ/, e.g., **A**rgentina /ɑrdʒən'ti:nə/ or /g/, e.g., **g**o /gou/.

b **2.3** Listen and repeat the sentences.

He isn't from **A**rgentina, he's **J**apanese.  
It isn't **C**hilean. It's **C**hinese.  
She isn't **S**panish, she's **T**urkish.

c **2.4** Listen. Say the nationality.

- 1 **1**) I'm from **C**hina. (He's **C**hinese.  
2 **1**) I'm from **S**pain. (She's **S**panish.

### 3 GRAMMAR verb be (plural): we, you, they

a Read the conversation. Complete it with words from the list.

American are aren't Canadian I'm meet sit Thanks



**Jessica** Excuse me. Are these seats free?  
**Max** Yes, they <sup>1</sup> are. Please <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ down.  
**Jessica** <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I'm Jessica. Hi.  
**Jim** And <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Jim.  
**Max** Are you <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Jessica** No, we <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We're from the UK.  
**Max** Oh, OK! We're <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I'm Max.  
**Rachel** And I'm Rachel.  
**Jim** Nice to <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you.

b **2.5** Listen and check. Then complete the chart.

be (plural)	
+	-
we are = we <u>are</u>	we are not = we <u>aren't</u>
you are = you _____	you are not = you _____
they are = they _____	they are not = they _____

c **2.9** Grammar Bank 2A

d **2.9** Listen. Ask the questions.

- 1 **1**) You're **C**hinese. (Are you **C**hinese?  
2 **1**) We're **l**ate. (Are we **l**ate?

## 4 READING & LISTENING

- a **2.10** Read and listen to the conversation. Then number the pictures 1–5.

**Jessica** Where in the US are you from?  
**Max** We're from here, from Chicago.  
**Jim** Chicago's a beautiful city!  
**Rachel** Yes, it is. Are you on vacation?  
**Jim** No, we aren't. We're here on business. But today's a free day.  
**Jessica** Yes, we're tourists today! Ooh. What's that?  
**Jim** Oh... Are they your dogs?  
**Max** Yes, they are. Sit. Sit!  
**Jessica** They're very nice. But I'm not very good with dogs.  
**Jim** Look – a free table. Over there.  
**Jessica** Nice to meet you. Have a nice day.  
**Max** Thanks. Nice to meet you, too.  
**Rachel** Bye. Good dogs, good dogs.



- b Read the conversation again. Write short answers.

- Are Rachel and Max from Canada?  
No, \_\_\_\_\_
- Are Jessica and Jim on business?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Is today a free day for Jessica and Jim?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Is Jessica good with dogs?  
\_\_\_\_\_

- c **2.11** Listen and complete the phrases.

- Excuse me. Are these seats \_\_\_\_\_?
- Are you on \_\_\_\_\_?
- We're here on \_\_\_\_\_.
- What's \_\_\_\_\_?
- Have a nice \_\_\_\_\_!
- Nice to meet you, \_\_\_\_\_.

- d In groups of four, practice the conversations in 3a and 4a.

## 5 SPEAKING

- a Ask and answer the questions with a partner.



- Is Shawn Mendes Canadian?  
*(Yes, he is. / No, he isn't. / I don't know.)*
- Are Chow Chow dogs Mexican?
- Is Samsung Korean?
- Is Emma Watson American?

- b **Communication** Is sushi Chinese?  
**A p.78 B p.82** Ask and answer about different nationalities.

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 2A

- p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

# 2B

## That's my bus!

What's your cell phone number?

It's 617-555-8953.

**G** Wh- and How questions with be **V** phone numbers, numbers 11-100 **P** understanding numbers

### 1 READING & LISTENING

- a **2.13** Read and listen to the conversation. Then complete the information on the card.

CARTE INTERNACIONAL DE ESTUDIANTE  
INTERNATIONAL STUDENT IDENTITY CARD



Name \_\_\_\_\_ Martínez  
Nationality \_\_\_\_\_  
Age \_\_\_\_\_

Pia Who's he?  
Lin He's Alex. He's in my class.  
Pia Where's he from?  
Lin He's from Mexico.  
Pia How old is he?  
Lin He's 22, I think.  
Pia He's very good-looking!



- b **2.14** Listen and complete the conversation.



Lin Hi, Pia. How are you?  
Pia Hi, Lin. I'm fine, and you?  
Lin I'm fine, too. This is Alex. He's in my <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Alex, this is Pia.  
Pia Hi, Alex!  
Alex Hi. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ class are you in?  
Lin That's my bus! Bye. See you <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_!  
Alex Bye. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ are you from, Pia?  
Pia I'm from <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. This is my bus stop. Bye, Alex. Nice to meet you.  
Alex Nice to meet you, too, Pia. What's your cell <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ number?  
Pia Sorry, my bus... It's 617-55-...!



- c **2.15** Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practice it in groups of three.

### 2 GRAMMAR Wh- and How questions with be

- a **2.16** Listen and repeat the question words.

How What Where Who

- b Complete the chart with question words from a.

1 A Where are you from?	B I'm from China.
2 A _____ are you?	B Fine, thanks.
3 A _____'s he?	B He's a friend.
4 A _____'s your name?	B Molly.
5 A _____'s Alberta?	B It's in Canada.
6 A _____ old are you?	B 26.
7 A _____'s your cell phone number?	B 617-555-6879.

- c **2.17** Listen and check.  
d **p.94 Grammar Bank 2B**  
e Cover the questions in the chart in b and look at the answers. Say the questions.

### 3 VOCABULARY phone numbers, numbers 11–100

- a **2.19** Listen and complete the phone number.  
2    2 -    5 - 0
- b **2.20** Practice saying these phone numbers. Listen and check.
- 1 608-5713
- 2 845-7902
- 3 231-504-0206
- c Ask and answer with a partner. Write the number.  
(What's your phone number?)
- d **p.116 Vocabulary Bank Numbers** Do Part 2.
- e **2.23** Listen and write the numbers.  
15
- f Play Buzz.

### 4 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING understanding numbers

- a **2.24** Listen to the difference between the numbers.
- 1 a 13    b 30                      5 a 17    b 70
- 2 a 14    b 40                      6 a 18    b 80
- 3 a 15    b 50                      7 a 19    b 90
- 4 a 16    b 60
- b **2.25** Listen. Which number do you hear? Circle a or b in a. Then practice saying all the numbers.
- c **2.26** Listen to the conversations. Number the questions 1–4.
- What's your address?    What's your email?  
How old are you?        What's your cell phone number?
- d Listen again and write the numbers in the answers.
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Oak Street
- 3 Age: \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 james \_\_\_\_\_@geemail.com

**Email addresses**  
@ = at    . = dot

### 5 WRITING & SPEAKING

- a **p.86 Writing A form** Complete an online form.
- b **Communication Personal information A p.79 B p.83** Interview your partner.

### 6 VIDEO LISTENING Meet the students

- a Watch the video *Meet the students*. Is it a nice school?



- b Watch again. Circle the correct answer.
- San Francisco is on the east / west coast of the United States.
  - San Francisco is / isn't famous for cable cars.
  - Rike and Hyeongwoo are teachers / students.
  - Hyeongwoo is 23 / 26 years old.
  - His teacher is Stephen / Laura.
  - Rike is Brazilian / Chilean.
  - Laura is a good teacher / student.
  - Their student house is / isn't near the school.
- c Watch some extracts from the video. Complete the sentences with words from the list.

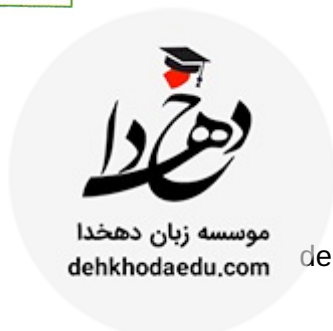
bedrooms    big    cafeteria    computer room  
kitchen    small    yard

- It's a \_\_\_\_\_ school with about 350 students.
- His class is \_\_\_\_\_, with only five students.
- ...they're in the \_\_\_\_\_...or here in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's a big house with five \_\_\_\_\_, a \_\_\_\_\_, and a \_\_\_\_\_.

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 2B

- p.131** Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

**Go online** to watch the video and review the lesson



# 1 & 2

## Review and Check

### GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 's your name?  
a Who b **What**
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you from Peru?  
a Are b Is
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Lisa. I'm Marisa.  
a Am not b I'm not
- 3 Hi, Mark! \_\_\_\_\_ in my class.  
a You b You're
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ from?  
B I'm from Saudi Arabia.  
a Where are you b Where you are
- 5 A Where's Toronto?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada.  
a Is b It's
- 6 A Is John married?  
B No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
a he isn't b she isn't
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ English?  
B No, she's American.  
a She's b Is she
- 8 They \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish. They're Mexican.  
a aren't b not
- 9 A Are you on vacation?  
B No, \_\_\_\_\_ here on business.  
a we're b we
- 10 Ana and Julia are from Recife. \_\_\_\_\_  
Brazilian.  
a She's b They're
- 11 A \_\_\_\_\_ Abe and Keiko Japanese?  
B Yes, they're from Tokyo.  
a Are b Is
- 12 A How old \_\_\_\_\_?  
B I'm 19.  
a you are b are you
- 13 A \_\_\_\_\_ are you?  
B Fine, thanks. And you?  
a How b Who
- 14 A \_\_\_\_\_ address?  
B It's 304 Main Street.  
a What your b What's your
- 15 A How \_\_\_\_\_ your last name?  
B G-A-R-C-I-A.  
a you spell b do you spell

### VOCABULARY

a Complete the chart.

Country	Nationality
China	Chinese
Turkey	1 _____
2 _____	Saudi
the United States	3 _____
4 _____	English
5 _____	Brazilian
Japan	6 _____

b Write the next number or word.

- one, two, *three*
- 1 zero, one, \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 five, six, \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 eleven, twelve, \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 nineteen, twenty, \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Tuesday, Wednesday, \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Friday, Saturday, \_\_\_\_\_

c Complete the words.

- Where are you **from**?
- 1 Good morning. **O** \_\_\_\_\_ your books, please. Page 19.
- 2 A **S** \_\_\_\_\_ I'm late.  
B OK. Sit **d** \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A What's the answer to number 10?  
B I don't **kn** \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A Excuse **m** \_\_\_\_\_, **wh** \_\_\_\_\_ *plato* in English?  
B Plate.  
A Can you **r** \_\_\_\_\_ that, please?  
B Yes. Plate.
- 5 A What's your phone **n** \_\_\_\_\_?  
B 555-8942.  
A Thanks. What's your **e** \_\_\_\_\_?  
B It's tom@hotmail.com.

d Write the things in the classroom.









a dictionary



- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_\_

## PRONUNCIATION

a Write the words for the sound pictures.

 bike	3 
1 	4 
2 	5 

b **P p.134-5 Sound Bank** Look at more words with the sounds in a, and these sounds:




Practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

- |                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| <u>S</u> aturday    | 3 fif <u>teen</u>        |
| 1 Chi <u>l</u> nese | 4 to morr <u>ow</u>      |
| 2 f <u>if</u> ty    | 5 Ar <u>gen</u> ti ni an |

## CAN YOU understand this text?


Read the profiles and complete the chart for Mark, Bianca, and Jacek. Then add information about you.



I'm **Mark Davis**. I'm from Seattle in the US. I'm a teacher. I'm twenty-eight and I'm single.



I'm **Bianca Costa**. I'm from Rio in Brazil. I'm twenty. I'm single and I'm a student.



I'm **Roger Ford**. I'm forty. I'm from Vancouver in Canada. I'm married, with two children. I'm a doctor.

First name	Mark	Bianca	Roger	_____ (= you)
Last name				
Age	28			
Nationality				
Marital status		single		
Occupation			doctor	

## ▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

▶ 2.28 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



- The woman's name is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Gayna
  - Jeina
  - Jayna
- Brian is from \_\_\_\_\_.
  - New York
  - California
  - Texas
- Richard is \_\_\_\_\_ years old.
  - 46
  - 56
  - 66
- Rytis's phone number is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 347-222-1289
  - 374-222-1289
  - 247-222-2198
- Christopher's email address is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - cyoon123it@yahoo.com
  - chrisyoon@yahoo.com
  - cyoonit123@yahoo.com

## CAN YOU say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?	Yes, I can.
1 say your name and where you are from	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 ask where other people are from	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 spell your name	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 count from 0 to 100	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 ask for and give personal information, e.g., name, address, age, etc.	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 say your phone number	<input type="checkbox"/>
7 use and understand classroom language	<input type="checkbox"/>
8 check into a hotel	<input type="checkbox"/>
9 book a table at a restaurant	<input type="checkbox"/>



# 3A

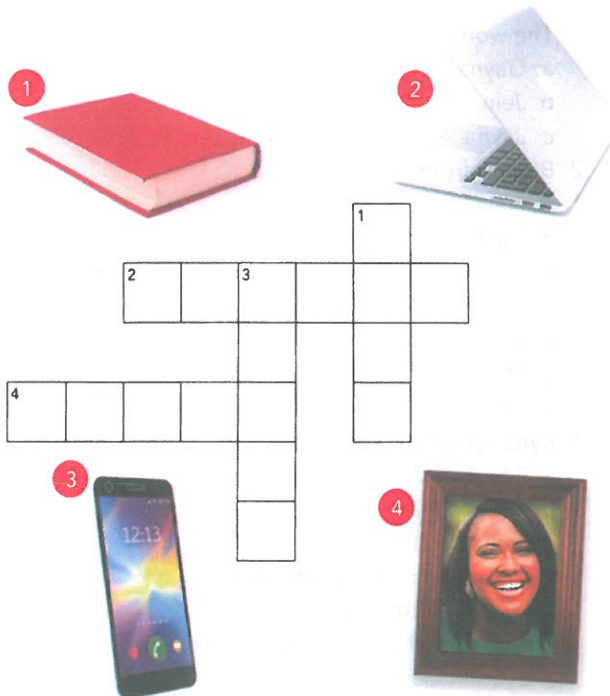
## Where are my keys?

Is it an ID card?  
No, it's a credit card.

**G** singular and plural nouns, a / an    **V** small things    **P** /z/ and /s/, plural endings

### 1 VOCABULARY small things

a What are the four things? Can you remember?



b **V** p.119 Vocabulary Bank Small things

### 2 GRAMMAR singular and plural nouns, a / an

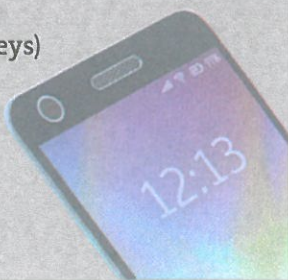
a Read the list. What do you think are the top four things?

## Oh no!

### Where's my phone?

Every day people all over the world say, "Oh no! Where's my...?" The top eight things that people look for are (not in the correct order):

- pens and pencils
- glasses and sunglasses
- keys (house keys and car keys)
- wallets and change purses
- bank cards
- cell phones
- umbrellas
- phone chargers



b **3.2** Listen and number the things 1–8 in the list in a. Is this order true for you?

(For me, number one is my glasses.)

c Look at the photos. Complete the chart.

1	2	3
a <i>pencil</i>	a _____	an _____
four _____	two _____	three _____

d **G** p.96 Grammar Bank 3A

e **C** Communication Memory game p.81  
Remember the things in the photo.

### 3 PRONUNCIATION /z/ and /s/, plural endings

a **3.5** Listen and repeat the words and sound.

	zebra	zero Brazil is he's
--	-------	---------------------

b **3.6** Listen and repeat the plural words and sounds.

	bags phones keys pens
	books coats passports tablets
/z/	watches glasses pieces change purses

c **3.7** Listen. Say the plural.

1 **)** It's a photo. (They're photos.)

## 4 LISTENING

- a **3.8** Listen to five situations. Number the photos 1–5.
- b Listen again. Write the small things for each situation.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_



## 5 SPEAKING

- a Look at the photos. What are the things? Work with a partner. **A** ask **B** about photo 1. **B** ask **A** about photo 2. Continue with the other photos.

*What is it?* (I think) it's a / an...

*What are they?* (I think) they're...  
(I don't know.)

- b What's in your bag or pocket? Check (✓) the things.

- a book
- a credit card
- glasses
- an ID card
- keys
- a pen
- a pencil
- a phone
- a photo
- a change purse
- an umbrella
- a wallet

- c Now tell a partner.

*In my bag, I have a book, keys, a pen...*

- d What other things do you have in your bag or pocket? Ask your teacher.

*What's...in English? How do you spell it?*



## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 3A

p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

# 3B


## Souvenirs

What are those?

They're key chains.

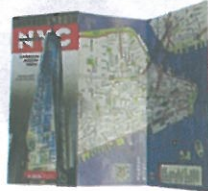
G this / that / these / those V souvenirs P /ð/, sentence rhythm

### 1 VOCABULARY souvenirs

a  3.10 Look at the eight things. Listen and repeat the words.



1 a cap /kæp/



2 a map /mæp/



3 a postcard /'poustkɑ:d/



4 a key chain /'ki:tʃeɪn/



5 a mug /mʌg/



6 sunglasses /'sʌŋglæsəz/



7 a toy /tɔɪ/



8 a T-shirt /'ti:ʃɜ:t/

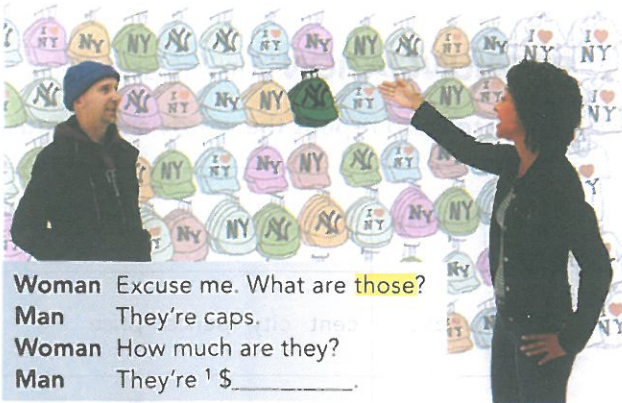
b Cover the words and photos and look at the souvenir stand. Say the souvenirs 1–8.

c What are typical souvenirs in your country?

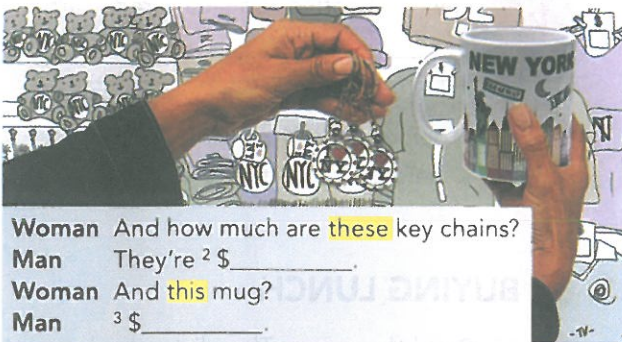


## 2 LISTENING

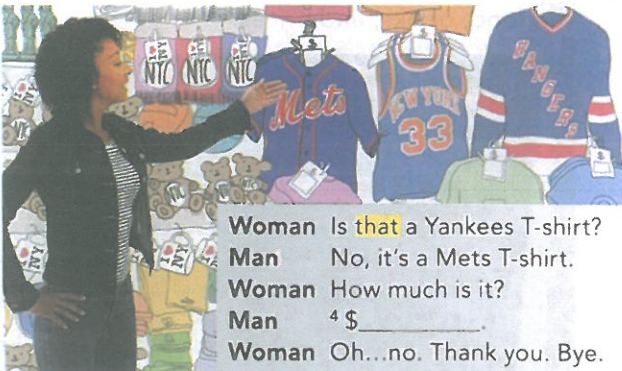
- a **3.11** Listen and complete the conversation with numbers.



Woman Excuse me. What are **those**?  
 Man They're caps.  
 Woman How much are they?  
 Man They're <sup>1</sup> \$ \_\_\_\_\_.



Woman And how much are **these** key chains?  
 Man They're <sup>2</sup> \$ \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Woman And **this** mug?  
 Man <sup>3</sup> \$ \_\_\_\_\_.



Woman Is **that** a Yankees T-shirt?  
 Man No, it's a Mets T-shirt.  
 Woman How much is it?  
 Man <sup>4</sup> \$ \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Woman Oh...no. Thank you. Bye.

- b **3.12** Listen and repeat the conversation in a. Then practice with a partner.



- c **3.13** Listen. What does the woman buy?

## 3 GRAMMAR *this / that / these / those*

- a Read the conversation in 2 again. Complete the chart with the **highlighted** words.

	here	there
singular	this	
plural		

- b **3.15** Grammar Bank 3B

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

/ð/, sentence rhythm

- a **3.15** Listen and repeat the words and sound.

	mo er	this that these those the they
--	-------	--------------------------------

- b **3.16** Listen and complete the conversations with words and numbers.

- How much is this \_\_\_\_\_?  
It's \$ \_\_\_\_\_.
- How much is that \_\_\_\_\_?  
It's \$ \_\_\_\_\_.
- How much are these \_\_\_\_\_?  
They're \$ \_\_\_\_\_.
- How much are those \_\_\_\_\_?  
They're \$ \_\_\_\_\_.
- Two \_\_\_\_\_, please.  
That's \$ \_\_\_\_\_.

- c Listen again. Then repeat the conversations. Copy the **rhythm**.

- d **3.16** Communication How much are these watches?  
**A** p.79 **B** p.83 Role-play conversations.

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 3B

- p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



understanding prices, buying lunch

P /ʊr/, /s/, and /k/

### 1 UNDERSTANDING PRICES

a **3.18** Listen and repeat.



b Match the prices and words.

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| 1 H £12.75 | A thirteen dollars and twenty-five cents |
| 2 €15.99   | B eighty cents                           |
| 3 \$50.19  | C five pounds thirty-five                |
| 4 £5.35    | D fifteen euros ninety-nine              |
| 5 \$13.25  | E sixty pence                            |
| 6 €3.20    | F fifty dollars and nineteen cents       |
| 7 €0.25    | G three euros twenty                     |
| 8 £1.50    | H twelve pounds seventy-five             |
| 9 60p      | I one pound fifty                        |
| 10 \$0.80  | J twenty-five cents                      |

c **3.19** Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.




d Cover the words and look at the prices. Practice saying them.

e **3.20** Listen to four conversations. How much is it? Circle the correct price.

- |                 |        |        |
|-----------------|--------|--------|
| 1 newspaper:    | \$2.50 | \$2.15 |
| 2 umbrella:     | €15    | €50    |
| 3 memory card:  | \$4.99 | \$9.49 |
| 4 train ticket: | £13.20 | £30.20 |

### 2 PRONUNCIATION /ʊr/, /s/, and /k/

**3.21** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 <b>t</b> tourist	euro Europe sure tour
 <b>s</b> snake	cent city pence price
 <b>k</b> key	coffee Canada credit card

**The letter c**

c = /s/ before e, i, and y, e.g., cent, city.

c = /k/ before other letters, e.g., coffee.

### 3 BUYING LUNCH

a **3.22** Read the menu. Then listen and repeat the food, drinks, and prices.



b Practice with a partner. Ask the prices on the menu.

How much is a tuna sandwich? (£4.15.)

# juice, please?



- c **3.23** Watch or listen to Rob in a London pub. Check (✓) the things he orders on the menu in a.
- d Watch or listen again and complete the conversation.

**Server** Who's next?  
**Rob** Can I have a <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ sandwich, please?  
**Server** Anything else?  
**Rob** And a <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, please.  
**Server** Ice and lemon?  
**Rob** <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, thanks.  
**Server** There you go.  
**Rob** Thanks. How much is it?  
**Server** <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.  
**Rob** Here you <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.  
**Server** Thanks. Here's your change.



- e **3.24** Watch or listen and repeat. Then practice the conversation with a partner.
- f Now role-play the conversation in pairs. **A** You are the server. **B** Order food and a drink. Then change roles.



- g **3.25** Watch or listen to Jenny and her friend Amy in a New York deli. How much is Jenny's lunch?



- h Watch or listen again. What do they have? Complete the chart.

Jenny	
Amy	

## 4 USEFUL PHRASES

- 3.26** Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

Can I have a cheese sandwich, please?	Here you are.
Anything else?	Here's your change.
And a Coke, please.	I'm fine, too.
Ice and lemon?	Wait for me.
No, thanks.	Sure!
How much is it?	Great idea.

# 4A

## Meet the family

Who's Victoria?

She's my boyfriend's sister.

**G** possessive adjectives, possessive 's **V** people and family **P** /ʌ/, /æ/, and /ə/

### 1 VOCABULARY people and family

- a Look at the photos. Match the words to people 1-4.




a boy  a girl  a man  a woman



- b **4.1** Listen and check.  
 c **p.120 Vocabulary Bank** People and family

### 2 PRONUNCIATION /ʌ/, /æ/, and /ə/

- a **4.5** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 up	husband Sunday son mother brother
 cat	man family bag thanks that
 computer	woman children welcome parent

**/ə/**

/ə/ is a very common vowel sound in syllables that aren't stressed, e.g., woman, welcome.

- b **4.6** Listen and repeat. Practice the sentences.

"Is Justin your husband?" "No, he's my brother."

I have a big family. That's my grandfather.

The man and woman over there are my grandparents.

### 3 GRAMMAR possessive adjectives, possessive 's

- a **4.7** Read and listen to the conversation on p.25.  
 Do you think Sarah is a) a friend of the family  
 b) a new babysitter?

- b Look at photo A. Point to the people and say their names.

*He's Mark.*

- c Read and listen again. Then complete the chart with a highlighted phrase.

I	my husband
you	
he	
she	
it	
we	our children
you (plural)	
they	

- d Read Part B again. Complete the sentences.

1 The name of the restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ Café.

2 My \_\_\_\_\_ phone number is there, too.

- e **4.8** Listen. Do you think Sarah is a good babysitter?

- f **p.98 Grammar Bank 4A**

- g Point to people in the classroom. What are their names?

*What's his name?*

*What's her name?*

- h Look at photo A on p.25. With a partner, say as much as you can about each person.

*His name's Oliver. He's Maria's son / Emma's brother.*

A



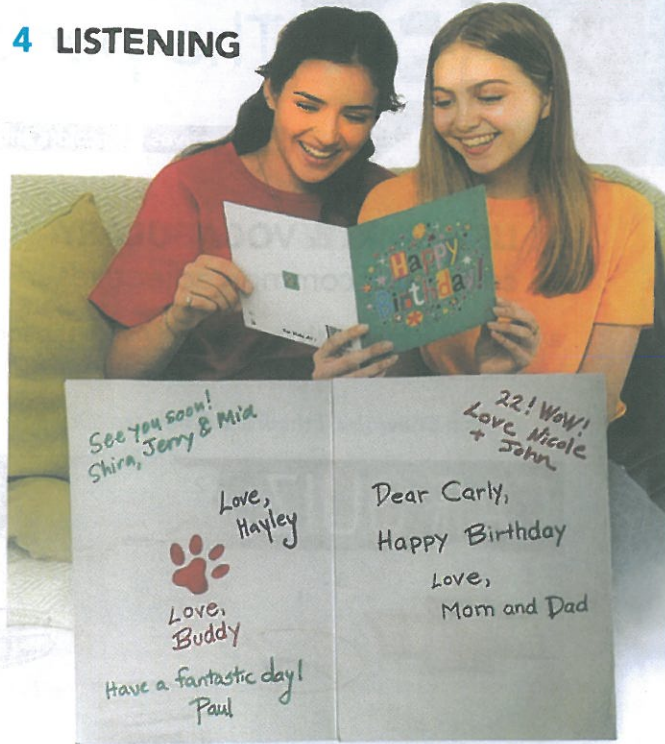
Maria Hi, Sarah! Come in.  
 Sarah Thanks.  
 Maria This is my husband, Mark.  
 Mark Hello.  
 Sarah Hi.  
 Maria And these are our children.  
 Children Hello!  
 Sarah What are their names?  
 Maria Her name's Emma, and his name's Oliver.  
 Emma And this is our cat.  
 Sarah Oh, cute! What's its name?  
 Emma Her name is Princess. She's a girl.  
 Sarah Oh, sorry.

B



Maria The name of the restaurant is Marc's Café. The phone number's on the table over there.  
 Sarah Great, thanks.  
 Maria And my husband's phone number is there, too.  
 Sarah OK. And your number is in my phone.  
 Maria Now, children. Sarah is your babysitter. Be good.  
 Children OK, Mom.

## 4 LISTENING



a **4.11** Carly is in Mexico with her friend Marina. It's her birthday. Look at her birthday card and listen. Who are the people?

- 1 Paul is Carly's brother.
- 2 Hayley is \_\_\_\_\_'s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Shira is \_\_\_\_\_'s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Nicole is \_\_\_\_\_'s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 John is \_\_\_\_\_'s \_\_\_\_\_.

b Listen again. Answer the questions.

- 1 How old are Paul and Nicole?
- 2 Who are Mia and Buddy?

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a Work with a partner:

- A and B write the names of six people (your family or friends) on a piece of paper.  
 A give your piece of paper to B. B give your piece of paper to A.  
 A ask B about his / her people. B ask A about his / her people.

Who's Marco? (He's my sister's husband.)

b **W p.86 Writing** A post about a photo  
 Write about a photo of your family.

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 4A

p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

Go online to review the lesson



# 4B

## The perfect car

Is it a good car?  
No, it isn't. It's small and very slow.

**G** adjectives **V** colors and common adjectives **P** /aɪ/ and /ɔɪ/, linking

### 1 LISTENING & VOCABULARY colors and common adjectives

a Take the quiz with a partner. Match the logos to the cars. What nationality are they?

*1 is a Chevrolet. I think it's American. Or English.*

b **4.13** Listen and check.

c **4.14** Now look at the picture and listen to the conversation. Which car is perfect for the woman...?

a in her opinion    b in her son's opinion

d Read the conversation. Write the **highlighted** words under the two cars.

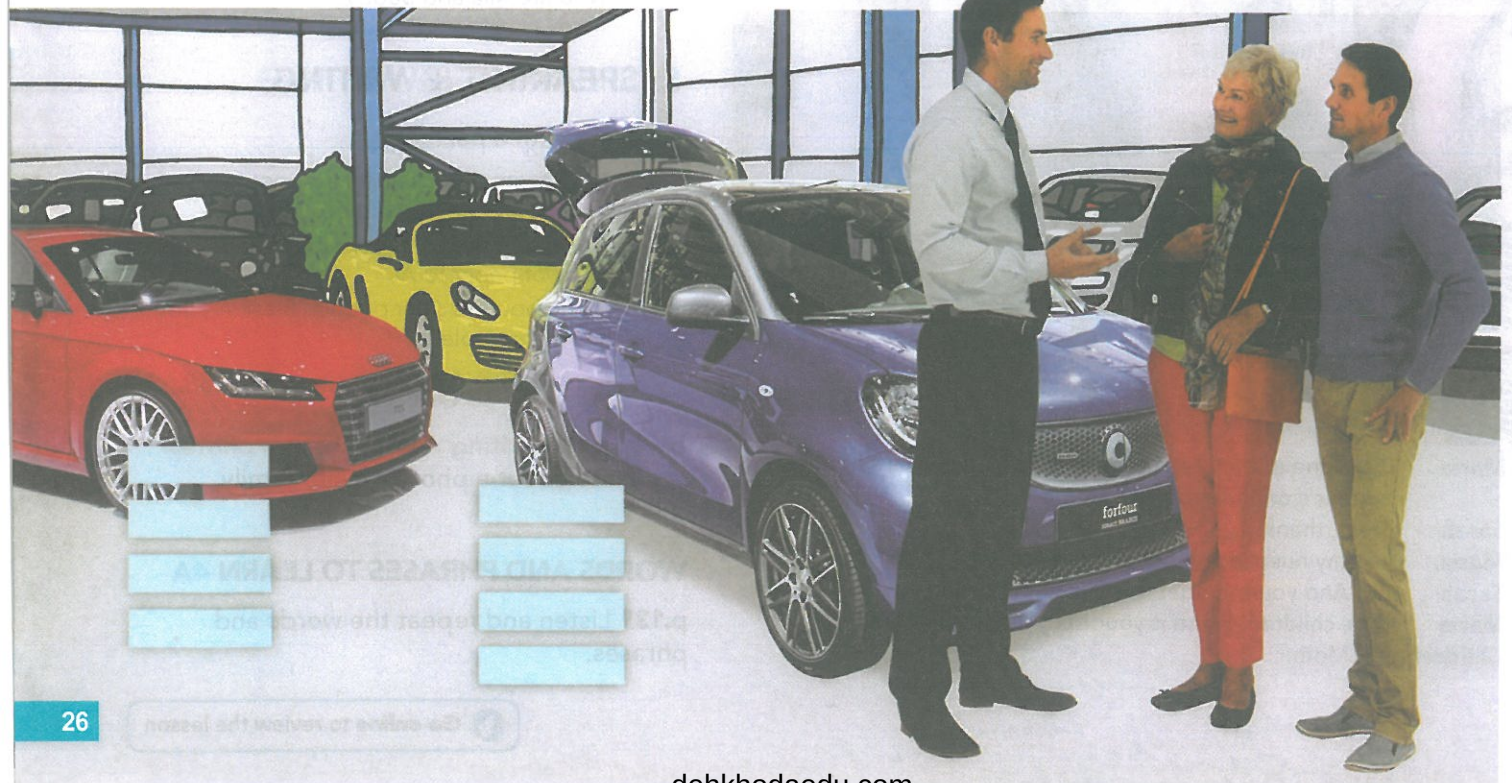
Salesperson Is the car for you?  
Man No, it's for my mother.  
Woman Yes, it's for me.  
Salesperson For you, ma'am? Well, what about this **blue** car here? It's **small** and it's easy to park.  
Man Yes, Mom, it's perfect for you.  
Woman But it's very **slow**. And it's **ugly**.  
Salesperson It's an electric car, ma'am. Very eco-friendly. They're good cars.  
Woman I prefer...this **red** car.  
Man But Mom, it's a sports car! It's very **fast**. And it's very **expensive**.  
Woman Yes, but it's my money. It's a **beautiful** car and I love it! How much is it?  
Salesperson Come with me, ma'am.  
Man Mom! ...

e **4.15** Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practice it in groups of three.

f **p.121 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives**

g With a partner, talk about **your** car or your family's car.

*My car is a Chevrolet Cruze. It's American. It's small and it's green. It isn't very fast.*



## 2 GRAMMAR adjectives

a Circle a or b.

- a It's a beautiful car.  
b It's a car beautiful.
- a They're goods cars.  
b They're good cars.



b **G** p.98 Grammar Bank 4B

c **4.20** Listen and say the plural.

- 1 ) an American car (American cars)

## 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɑr/ and /ɔr/, linking

a **4.21** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 car	large park are tomorrow
 horse	short sport orange door

b **4.22** Listen. Practice the phrases.

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| a big umbrella | an old man         |
| a short email  | an orange coat     |
| brown eggs     | an expensive watch |

c **4.23** Listen and write five phrases.

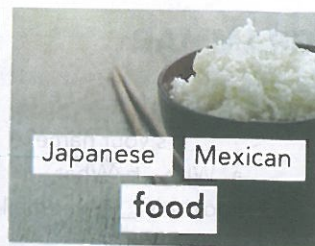
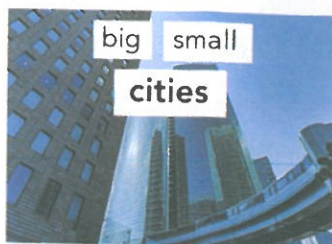
d With a partner, look at the photos from **Vocabulary Bank Adjectives** and make sentences.

- (It's a black bag. (They're blue keys.

## 4 SPEAKING

Talk in small groups.

I prefer small cities. (Me too. (I prefer big cities.



## 5 VIDEO LISTENING Beaulieu Motor Museum

a Watch the video *Beaulieu Motor Museum*. Which is your favorite car?

b Watch again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- 1 Beaulieu is a small village.
- 2 It isn't famous.
- 3 The National Motor Museum is 52 years old.
- 4 The host's favorite car is the Bluebird.
- 5 The Ferrari Dino is 14 years old.
- 6 The Ford Anglia is an American car.
- 7 It's famous because it's in the Star Wars movies.
- 8 The National Motor Museum has motorcycles, too.

c Do you think it's an interesting museum?

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 4B

p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



**Go online** to watch the video and review the lesson

# 3&4

## Review and Check

### GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

\_\_\_\_\_ 's your name?

a Who b **What**

1 Look! It's \_\_\_\_\_ email from Melanie.

a an b a

2 A Where are my sunglasses? B \_\_\_\_\_ in your bag.

a It's b They're

3 These are nice \_\_\_\_\_.

a watches b watches

4 Kyoto and Osaka are two important \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan.

a citys b cities

5 A What's \_\_\_\_\_?

B It's a key chain.

a this b these

6 How much are \_\_\_\_\_ T-shirts?

a those b that

7 Look at \_\_\_\_\_ house over there. It's beautiful.

a this b that

8 \_\_\_\_\_ my friend, Tom.

a It is b This is

9 He's Mexican. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Miguel.

a His b Her

10 We're Mr. and Mrs. Brown. \_\_\_\_\_ son's name is Joe.

a Our b Their

11 Justin is \_\_\_\_\_ brother.

a Sophies b Sophie's

12 My \_\_\_\_\_ is Amanda.

a name's wife b wife's name

13 These chairs are \_\_\_\_\_.

a very expensive b very expensive



14 A Hyundai is a \_\_\_\_\_.

a car Korean b Korean car

15 They're \_\_\_\_\_.

a good photos b goods photos

b Complete the chart.

	man	father	2 _____	son	4 _____	boyfriend
	woman	1 _____	wife	3 _____	sister	5 _____

c Write the plural.

mother + father = parents

1 a woman two \_\_\_\_\_


2 a child three \_\_\_\_\_

3 a man four \_\_\_\_\_

4 a person 50 \_\_\_\_\_

d Write the colors.

white

1  \_\_\_\_\_

4  \_\_\_\_\_

2  \_\_\_\_\_

5  \_\_\_\_\_

3  \_\_\_\_\_

6  \_\_\_\_\_

e Write the opposite adjectives.

fast slow

3 long \_\_\_\_\_

1 big \_\_\_\_\_

4 new \_\_\_\_\_

2 expensive \_\_\_\_\_

5 ugly \_\_\_\_\_

### PRONUNCIATION

a Write the words for the sound pictures.



b **P p.134-5 Sound Bank** Look at more words with the sounds in a, and these sounds:



Practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

um|bre|lla

2 sun|glass|es

4 ex|pen|sive

1 wo|man

3 or|ange

5 si|ster

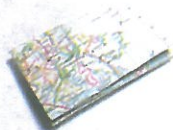
### VOCABULARY

a Write a / an + the things.



a wallet

1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



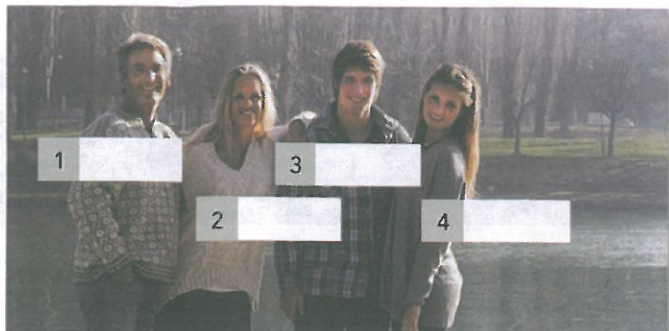
4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_

## CAN YOU understand this text?

a Read the two texts and write the people's names in the pictures.



**My name's Jeremy Fisher** and I'm from Vancouver in Canada. I'm married to Anna and I have two children, a son and a daughter. My son's name is Matthew. He's 17. He's tall with dark hair. My daughter's name is Susanna. She's 19. I think my children are good-looking, probably because their mother is beautiful!



**My name's Maddie** and I'm from Seattle in the US. I'm 22. I have two sisters. Their names are Finn and Stella. Finn is 24. She's good-looking, with long blond hair. She isn't married. Stella is 31 and very different from Finn, but she's good-looking, too. She's married. Her husband's name is Ezra.

b Read again and answer the questions with a sentence.

- 1 What's Jeremy's last name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Where is he from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What's his son's name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 How old is Susanna?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What nationality is Maddie?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Who is Finn?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Is she married?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 How old is Stella?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## CAN YOU understand these people?

4.25 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



- 1 What's in Richard's bag?
  - a his keys
  - b his coat
  - c his camera
- 2 What's in Josh's bag?
  - a his phone, charger, and umbrella
  - b his notebooks, charger, and laptop
  - c his charger, laptop, and books
- 3 There are \_\_\_\_ people in Kieran's family.
  - a 4
  - b 5
  - c 6
- 4 A cup of coffee in Debra's local coffee shop is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a cheap
  - b £4
  - c \$4
- 5 Daniel's car is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a small
  - b black
  - c a Honda

## CAN YOU say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

Yes, I can.

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1 say what's in your bag   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 talk about things with <i>this</i> , <i>that</i> , <i>these</i> , and <i>those</i> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 say who is in your family  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 introduce somebody   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 describe cars  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 ask for things in a café or store  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 ask about prices   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

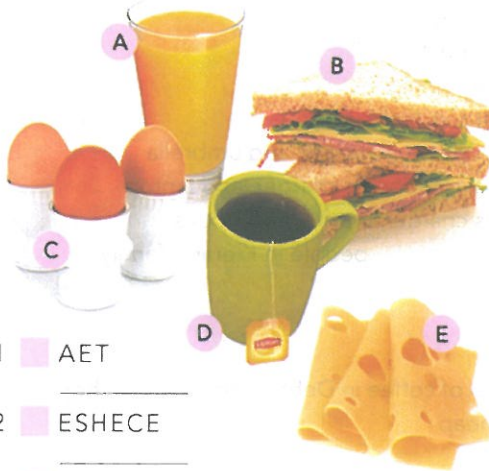
We have fruit and cereal for breakfast.

I don't have breakfast. I have a coffee at work.

G simple present + and -: I, you, we, they V food and drink P /dʒ/ and /g/

### 1 VOCABULARY food and drink

- a Re-order the letters to make food and drink words. Match them to photos A–E.



- 1  AET \_\_\_\_\_
- 2  ESHECE \_\_\_\_\_
- 3  GRANEO CUJIE \_\_\_\_\_
- 4  WANDCHIS \_\_\_\_\_
- 5  GESG \_\_\_\_\_

- b **5.1** Listen and check.
- c **p.122 Vocabulary Bank** Food and drink

### 2 READING & SPEAKING

- a Look at the photos and read the article and comments. Who thinks breakfast is a) important, b) not important?
- b **5.4** Complete the comments with food and drink words. Then listen and check.
- c Read the comments again. Circle the places where they have breakfast. Underline the other words for food and drink.
- d Is breakfast important for you? What do you have? Where do you have it?

## A good breakfast – is it important?

**Is breakfast a very important meal, or not important at all?** Scientists and doctors have different opinions: some think that a big breakfast is good for you because you eat less during the day. Others say that if you aren't hungry, don't have breakfast. It's only extra calories!

**Is breakfast important for you? Send us a photo of your breakfast.**

#### Comments



#### Ashley, the US

I have breakfast in a great café near my office. I have a <sup>1</sup>croissant and coffee – an espresso with hot <sup>2</sup>m\_\_\_\_\_. Mmmm. I love breakfast! It's my favorite meal.



#### Paulo, Brazil

I have breakfast at home, but I don't have a big breakfast. I have <sup>3</sup>fr\_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>4</sup>y\_\_\_\_\_, and sometimes toast. It's a healthy breakfast. That's a good thing at the beginning of the day.



#### Rob, Canada

I don't eat in the morning. I'm not hungry. I just have a <sup>5</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ at work. But I have lunch early, at about 11:30.



#### Sakura, Japan

I really like breakfast. It's an important meal for Japanese people. I have breakfast at home with my family. We have a traditional breakfast. It isn't very different from lunch and dinner. We have <sup>6</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_, <sup>7</sup>f\_\_\_\_\_, and miso soup and we drink green tea. We don't drink coffee with a traditional Japanese breakfast.



### 3 GRAMMAR simple present ⊕ and ⊖: I, you, we, they

a Complete the sentences from the comments in 2.

simple present ⊕ and ⊖	
⊕ Ashley	1 I _____ breakfast in a great café.
Sakura	2 I really _____ breakfast.
	3 We _____ a traditional breakfast.
⊖ Paulo	4 I _____ a big breakfast.
Rob	5 I _____ in the morning.
Sakura	6 We _____ coffee with a traditional Japanese breakfast.

b p.100 Grammar Bank 5A

c Look at **Vocabulary Bank** Food and drink p.122 Say what you like 😊 and don't like 😞.

*( I like fish. I don't like meat.*

### 4 LISTENING

a 5.6 Listen to Anna talk about her favorite meal. Complete her column in the chart.

	Anna	Will	Sarah
Favorite meal	dinner	lunch	breakfast
Where?	<sup>1</sup> At _____ or at a _____.	<sup>4</sup> At _____.	<sup>7</sup> Usually at _____. On Wednesdays at a _____.
Food	<sup>2</sup> _____ or _____ and _____.	<sup>5</sup> Different things but with _____.	<sup>8</sup> _____ and an _____. On Wednesdays a _____.
Drink	<sup>3</sup> A cup of _____.	<sup>6</sup> _____ and then a _____.	<sup>9</sup> _____ or _____. On Wednesdays _____.

b 5.7 Now repeat for Will and Sarah.

c What's your favorite meal of the day?

### 5 PRONUNCIATION /dʒ/ and /g/

a 5.8 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

jazz	juice vegetables orange
girl	sugar yogurt eggs

#### g and j

Remember j always = /dʒ/. g is sometimes /g/ (e.g., **sugar**) and sometimes /dʒ/ (e.g., **orange**), especially before e.

b 5.9 Listen. Practice the sentences.

I'm Jane. I like orange juice and vegetables.

I'm Grace. I have eggs, and coffee with sugar.

### 6 SPEAKING

a Complete the sentences so they are true about you and people in your country.

#### Food: you and your country

##### You

I have breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ (Where?)

I have \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast. (What?)

I have lunch \_\_\_\_\_ (Where?)

I have dinner with \_\_\_\_\_ (Who?)

I eat a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (What?)

I love \_\_\_\_\_ (What?)

I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ (What?)

##### Your country

People have \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast. (What?)

They have a big \_\_\_\_\_ (lunch / dinner)

They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of food from other countries. (eat / don't eat)

They eat a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (What?)

They drink a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (What?)

b Talk to a partner. Say your first sentence. Then say *What about you?*

*I have breakfast at home. What about you?*

*( I have breakfast at home, too.*

### 7 WRITING

p.86 Writing A comment post Write about your breakfast.

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 5A

p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

Go online to review the lesson

# 5B

## A very long flight

Do you live in New York?

No, I don't. I live in London.

**G** simple present [?] : I, you, we, they    **V** common verb phrases 1    **P** /w/ and /v/, sentence rhythm and linking

### 1 GRAMMAR simple present [?]: I, you, we, they

- a **5.11** Eve, a British woman, and Wendy, an American woman, are on a flight from London to New York. Listen to the conversation and number the pictures 1–4.

- 1 Eve Do you like the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 Wendy Yes, I do. It's very good.  
 Eve She's my favorite writer. I love her books.
- 2 Eve Do you live in <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 Wendy No, I don't. I live in London. My husband and I work for a British company.  
 Eve Oh! Do you have <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 Wendy No, we don't.  
 Eve I have two sons and a daughter. David and Andrew are in college and Carla's in high school. Look. Here are some photos... This is a photo of our vacation in Barbados. Do you know Barbados?  
 Wendy No, I don't.
- 3 Attendant Do you want <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, fish, or pasta?  
 Eve Oh, fish, please.  
 Wendy Pasta for me, please.  
 Eve How's your pasta?  
 Wendy It's OK.  
 Eve This fish isn't very good. Excuse me, I don't like this fish. Can I have the <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, please?  
 Attendant I'm sorry, ma'am. We're out of pasta.
- 4 Eve Oh, I need to go to the restroom.  
 Wendy Oops, sorry.  
 Wendy Excuse me. What <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ do we arrive?  
 Attendant In 25 minutes, ma'am.  
 Wendy That's good!

- b Read the conversation and complete it with words from the list.

book children meat New York pasta time

- c Listen again and check.  
 d Underline the questions and short answers in parts 1 and 2 of the conversation.  
 e **G** p.100 Grammar Bank 5B



## 2 VOCABULARY common verb phrases 1

a Match the phrases.

- |          |          |                            |
|----------|----------|----------------------------|
| 1 I love | <b>d</b> | a in London.               |
| 2 I live | <b>g</b> | b two sons and a daughter. |
| 3 I work | <b>h</b> | c for a British company.   |
| 4 I want | <b>f</b> | d her books.               |
| 5 I have | <b>e</b> | e the fish, please.        |

b **Vp.123 Vocabulary Bank** Common verb phrases 1

c Write four true sentences about you, two positive and two negative.

*I watch CNN. I don't read a newspaper.*

d In pairs, read your sentences to each other. Are any of them the same?

## 3 LISTENING





a **5.15** At the end of her trip, Eve gets a taxi back to the airport. Read sentences 1–10 and look at the **bold** words. Then listen and circle a or b.

- 1 a Her flight is from **Newark** airport.  
**(b)** Her flight is from **JFK**.
  - 2 a The traffic is **bad**.  
b The traffic is **good**.
  - 3 a Eve is from **Manchester**.  
b Eve is from **London**.
  - 4 a The taxi driver is from **New York**.  
b The taxi driver is from **Puerto Rico**.
  - 5 a London is very **cheap**.  
b London is very **expensive**.
  - 6 a The taxi driver has two **sons**.  
b The taxi driver has two **daughters**.
  - 7 a The taxi is **\$87.50**.  
b The taxi is **\$87.15**.
  - 8 a The taxi driver says "Have a good **day**."  
b The taxi driver says "Have a good **flight**."
  - 9 a Eve is **late**.  
b Eve **isn't late**.
  - 10 a The gate number is **B5**.  
b The gate number is **C5**.
- b **5.16** Listen to what happens in the airport. Why does Eve say "What a nice surprise!"?

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /w/ and /v/, sentence rhythm and linking

a **5.17** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 <b>witch</b>	want work when where
 <b>vase</b>	very have live TV

b **5.18** Listen. Notice the linked ( ) words.

- 1 A Do you live in a small house?  
B No, I don't. I live in a big house.
- 2 A Do you have a big family?  
B Yes, I do. I have three sisters.
- 3 A Do you watch a lot of TV?  
B No, I don't. I read books.

c Listen again and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

d **5.19** Now listen and write five sentences.

e Complete 2–10 with a verb from the list.

drink eat go have listen live  
need read speak watch

## Do you...

- 1 live near here? / in a house or an apartment?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ brothers and sisters? / a cat or a dog?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ TV on your phone? / YouTube videos?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ to pop music? / to classical music?
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper? / magazines?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ meat? / a lot of chocolate?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice? / tea?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish? / Arabic?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ a new phone? / a new car?
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ to a gym? / to the movies on weekends?

f Ask and answer questions with a partner.

*Do you live near here?* ( Yes, I do. I live near the park.

*Do you live in a house or an apartment?*  
( I live in a small apartment.

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 5B

**p.131** Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



telling the time    **V** the time, saying how you feel    **P** /a/, silent consonants

## 1 TELLING THE TIME

**a** 5.21 Watch or listen and match the conversations to photos A–C.



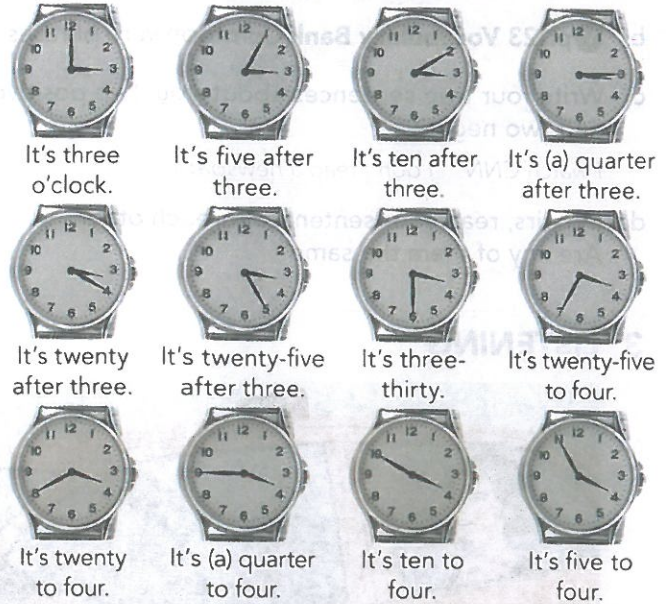
- 1** **Rob** I'm tired. What time is it?  
**Alan** It's eleven o'clock.  
**Rob** I need to go. I have a meeting in Oxford tomorrow morning.  
**Alan** One more drink?  
**Rob** Oh, OK!
- 2** **Rob** Excuse me. What time is it?  
**Woman** It's a quarter to eight. What time's your train?  
**Rob** At seven forty-seven.  
**Woman** You need to hurry! You only have two minutes.  
**Rob** Thanks!
- 3** **Rob** Hello. I'm Rob Walker. I'm sorry I'm late.  
**Man** You're an hour late. It's half past ten.  
**Rob** I know. I'm really sorry.

**b** 5.22 Watch or listen and repeat the conversations in a. Then practice them with a partner.

**c** Cover the conversations and look at the clocks in photos A–C. What time is it?

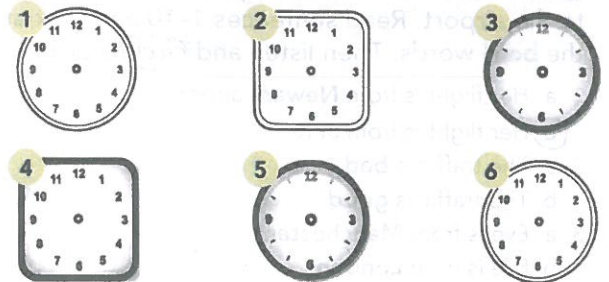
## 2 VOCABULARY the time

**a** 5.23 Listen and repeat the times.



**b** Cover the times. Look at the clocks and say the times.

**c** 5.24 Listen and draw the times on the clocks.



**The time**

1 You can also say the time with numbers, e.g., 7:15 = (a) quarter after seven **OR** seven fifteen.

2 60 minutes /'mɪnəts/ = one hour /'aʊər/.

**American and British English**

(nine)-thirty = American English  
 half past (nine) = British English

**d** Practice with a partner.

Number 1. What time is it? (It's twenty to nine.)

**e** **Communication** What time is it? **A p.79**  
**B p.83** Ask and answer about times.

### 3 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, silent consonants

a 5.25 Listen and repeat the words and sound.

 clock	what Oxford sorry coffee
---	--------------------------

b 5.26 Listen and repeat the words. Practice saying them.

eight half hour know listen two Wednesday  
what write

#### Silent letters

Some English words have a "silent letter," e.g., in *where*, you don't pronounce the *h* /wɛr/.

c 5.27 Listen to the conversations. Then practice with a partner.

A What time is it?  
B It's eight-thirty.

A Is the meeting on Wednesday?  
B I don't know.

A Listen and write the answer. What's half of four?  
B That's easy! Two!

### 4 VOCABULARY saying how you feel

a 5.28 Listen and repeat the sentences.



1 I'm tired.      2 I'm cold.      3 I'm hungry.



4 I'm hot.      5 I'm thirsty.

b Match the sentences in a to a-e.

- a Time for lunch.
- b Time for bed.
- c It's 41° (degrees /dɪ'grɪz/) this morning.
- d I need a glass of water.
- e It's 95°!

c 5.29 Listen and check. How do you feel right now?



### 5 A NIGHT OUT

a 5.30 Watch or listen to Jenny and Amy. Check (✓) the two places they go to.

- a store
- a café
- a theater
- a club
- a restaurant

b Watch or listen again. Complete sentences 1-3 with times.

- 1 The show is at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Jenny and Amy meet at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The show ends at \_\_\_\_\_.

### 6 USEFUL PHRASES

5.31 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

I need to go.	What a great show!
You need to hurry.	It's late and I'm tired.
You're an hour late.	Come on.
I'm really sorry.	OK. Let's go.
Don't worry.	



Go online to watch the video lesson [dehkodaedu.com](http://dehkodaedu.com)

# 6A

## A school reunion

What does she do?

She's a journalist. She works for a newspaper.

**G** simple present: he, she, it    **V** jobs and places of work    **P** third person -es, sentence rhythm

### 1 VOCABULARY jobs and places of work

a Look at the photos. What are their jobs?



- 1 He's a t\_\_\_\_\_ dr\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She's a t\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He's a r\_\_\_\_\_.

b **V** p.124 Vocabulary Bank Jobs and places of work

c Choose a job from **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs and places of work. Ask five other students the questions. Answer their questions.

*(What do you do? (Where do you work?)*

### 2 GRAMMAR simple present: he, she, it

a Look at the picture. Why are the people together?

b **V** 6.4 Cover the conversation and listen. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

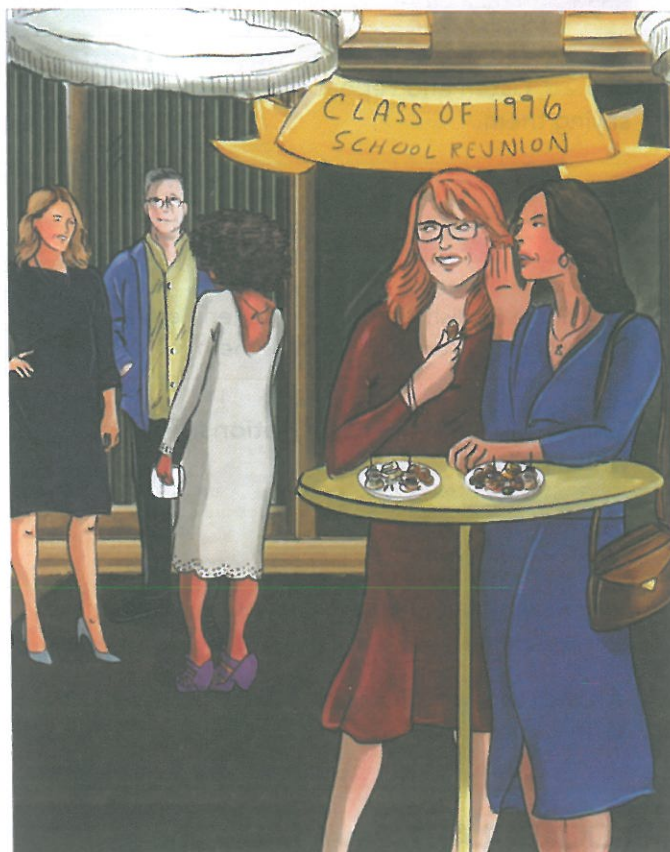
- 1 Anna is a journalist.
- 2 She works for a magazine.
- 3 Matt is a teacher.
- 4 He teaches English.
- 5 Laura is Matt's daughter.

c Listen again and read the conversation. Check your answers.

d Read the conversation again and complete the chart.

simple present, third person	
I / you	he / she
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> I work for a newspaper.	She _____ for a newspaper.
<input type="checkbox"/> I don't wear glasses.	She _____ glasses.
<input type="checkbox"/> What do you do?	What _____ he do?

e **G** p.102 Grammar Bank 6A



**Julia** Who's that over there?  
**Sarah** It's Anna, you know, the intelligent girl.  
**Julia** She's very different! Her hair's blonde.  
**Sarah** Yes, and she doesn't wear glasses now.  
**Julia** What does she do?  
**Sarah** She's a journalist. She works for a newspaper – *The Times*, I think.  
**Julia** Is she good?  
**Sarah** I don't know. I don't read *The Times*.

**Julia** And who's that man with gray hair? Is it Matt?  
**Sarah** Yes!  
**Julia** What does he do?  
**Sarah** He's a teacher. He teaches Spanish.  
**Julia** Where does he work?  
**Sarah** At our old school!  
**Julia** No! At our old school?  
**Sarah** Yes, and he's married to Laura!  
**Julia** Laura? From our class? Is she here?  
**Sarah** Yes, she's with Matt.  
**Julia** Very nice shoes.  
**Sarah** I know, right? They're amazing!

**Laura** Sarah, Julia, hi! Great to see you!  
**Julia** Hi, Laura. Wow, I love your shoes – they're beautiful...

### 3 PRONUNCIATION third person -es

a 6.6 Listen and circle the words where final -es = /ɪz/.

does finishes goes likes lives teaches watches writes

b 6.7 Listen. Change the sentences. Use the third person.

1 I live in New York. He... (He lives in New York.

### 4 READING


a In what jobs in your country do people need to speak English?


b Read the article. Complete 1 and 2 with a job from **Vocabulary Bank Jobs and places of work p.124.**

## Do you speak English at work?

**What do these people have in common:** A banker in Mexico City, a taxi driver in Ankara, and a worker in the Hitachi electronics factory in Tokyo? They all speak English at work. Do you speak English at work? Write and tell us.



1  Antonio I work in a restaurant in Lima. I'm a \_\_\_\_\_. I speak English at work every day because a lot of tourists come here. I help customers with the menu and I say what the special dishes are. They are very happy because they can talk to me in English. A lot of tourists don't speak Spanish, but they usually speak English.

2  Charlotte I'm a \_\_\_\_\_ and I work in an office in Buenos Aires. It's a multinational company. When people from other countries visit the company, I need to welcome them in English. I also need to answer the phone in English. When we have meetings, we all speak in English because it's the language of the company.

c 6.8 Now read again and listen. Check your answers.

d Answer the questions with a partner.

- Why does Antonio speak English at work?
- How does he help people?
- Who does Charlotte work for?
- What two things does she do in English?
- Why do they speak English in meetings in her company?

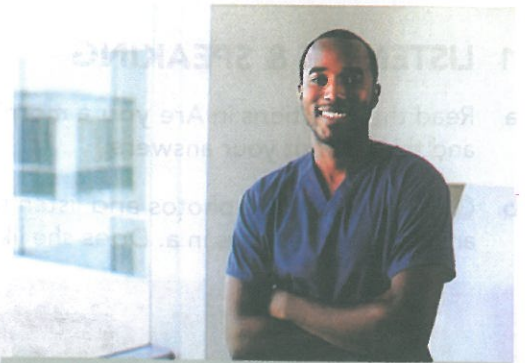
#### Why...? Because...

We use *Why...?* /waɪ/ to ask for a reason, and *Because...* /bi'kɔːz/ to give a reason.

**Why are the tourists happy? Because they can talk to Antonio in English.**

### 5 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sentence rhythm

a 6.9 Listen to the conversation.



A What does he do?

B He's a nurse.

A Where does he work?

B He works in a hospital.

A Does he speak English at work?

B No, he doesn't.

A Does he like his job?

B Yes, he does.

b 6.10 Listen again and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

c Think of two people you know who have jobs. Ask and answer with a partner.

What / he (she) do?

Where / he (she) work?

/ he (she) speak English at work?

/ he (she) like his (her) job? Why?

*Person number one is my mother.*

*(What does she do?)*

### 6 WRITING

Write paragraphs about the two people in 5c.

*My mother is a teacher. She works at an elementary school in São Paulo. She doesn't speak English at work. She loves her job because she likes children!*

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 6A

p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

Go online to review the lesson

# 6B

## Good morning, goodnight

What time do you usually get up?

I get up at 7.00.

**G** adverbs of frequency **V** a typical day **P** /y/ and /yu/, sentence rhythm

### 1 LISTENING & SPEAKING

- a Read the questions in **Are you a morning person?** and think about your answers.
- b **6.12** Look at the photos and listen to Hannah answer the questions in a. Does she like mornings?



Hannah is a concert planner. Her son, Kit, is three years old.



avocado



bath

- c Listen again and write her answers to questions 1–8.
- d **6.13** Listen and repeat questions 1–8.
- e Ask your partner the questions. Is he or she a "morning person"? Why (not)?

### 2 VOCABULARY a typical day

- a **p.125 Vocabulary Bank A typical day**
- b Can you remember? Mime or draw five verb phrases for your partner to guess.

### Are you a *morning* person?

- 1 What time do you usually get up?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you usually feel tired?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do you take a shower or a bath in the morning?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you always have breakfast? Where?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 What do you have for breakfast?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 What time do you go to work (school)?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do you usually need to hurry in the morning?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Do you like mornings? Why (not)?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 3 GRAMMAR adverbs of frequency

- a Match sentences 1–4 to a–d.


	M	Tu	W	Th	F
1 I <b>always</b> get up at 8:00, ... <b>c</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
2 I <b>never</b> drink coffee, ... <b>a</b>	✗	✗	✗	✗	✗
3 I <b>usually</b> finish work at 6:00, ... <b>d</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✗
4 I <b>sometimes</b> watch TV, ... <b>b</b>	✗	✓	✗	✗	✓

- a but on Fridays I finish at 3:00.  
b or I read and listen to music.  
c because I start work at 9:00.  
d because I don't like it.

- b **p.102 Grammar Bank 6B**

#### 4 PRONUNCIATION /y/ and /yu/, sentence rhythm

- a 6.17 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 y	acht	es ou oung ellow
/yu/	usually university	uniform beautiful

- b 6.18 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

What time do you usually have lunch?  
At one-thirty.

What time do you usually have dinner?  
At about eight o'clock.

What time do you usually go to bed?  
At eleven-thirty.

- c Ask and answer the questions with a partner.
- d In pairs, make true sentences about you. Use *always, usually, sometimes, or never*.
- listen to the radio in the car
  - read a newspaper in the morning
  - speak English outside class
  - watch TV in the evening
  - have a big lunch
  - do housework on the weekend
  - eat fast food
  - drink espresso

*I always listen to the radio in the car. I listen to pop music.*

#### 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

- a Use the pictures in **Vocabulary Bank A typical day p.125** to tell your partner about your typical evening. Use adverbs of frequency.

*I never make dinner. My father makes it.  
We usually have dinner at eight-thirty.*

- b Write about your typical morning and afternoon. Use adverbs of frequency (*always, usually, etc.*) and time words (*then, after breakfast, etc.*).

#### 6 VIDEO LISTENING A day in the life of a New York tour guide

- a Look at photos A–F from the video *A day in the life of a New York tour guide*. With a partner, number the photos 1–6.



- b Watch the video and check your order.
- c Watch again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).
- 1 Peter lives in an apartment in Brooklyn.
  - 2 He gets up at seven o'clock.
  - 3 He usually has an omelet for breakfast.
  - 4 He works for a company called Real World Tours.
  - 5 His tours begin at eleven o'clock.
  - 6 He usually has a sandwich for lunch.
  - 7 The tour ends on Wall Street.
  - 8 Peter goes home by subway.
  - 9 In the evening he reads or watches TV.
  - 10 Every day he walks about ten miles.
- d Watch some extracts from the video. Complete the sentences with a "time" word or phrase.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ he goes there by subway.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ work, Peter takes the subway back to Brooklyn.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ he relaxes.

- e Do you think Peter's job is easy or difficult? Why?

#### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 6B

- p.131 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 's your name?  
 a Who b What
- 1 In Japan, we \_\_\_\_\_ rice for breakfast.  
 a have b has
- 2 They \_\_\_\_\_ meat.  
 a don't eat b not eat
- 3 You \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fast food. It isn't good for you.  
 a eats b eat
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ tea. I prefer coffee.  
 a don't drink b 'm not drink
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ you want a hot chocolate?  
 a Are b Do
- 6 A Do they live near here?  
 B Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a do b live
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ Mexican food?  
 a Like you b Do you like
- 8 A What time \_\_\_\_\_?  
 B At 5:30.  
 a do we arrive b we arrive
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ she speak Spanish?  
 a Do b Does
- 10 He \_\_\_\_\_ for a fashion magazine.  
 a works b work
- 11 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ children.  
 a don't have b doesn't have
- 12 She \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym after work.  
 a gos b goes
- 13 He \_\_\_\_\_ a shower before breakfast.  
 a always takes b takes always
- 14 I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed before 12:00.  
 a don't never go b never go
- 15 What time \_\_\_\_\_ lunch?  
 a you have usually b do you usually have

## VOCABULARY

a Write the words.



bread



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_

b Complete the verbs.

take a shower

- 1 r \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper      6 w \_\_\_\_\_ TV  
 2 l \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio      7 d \_\_\_\_\_ housework  
 3 g \_\_\_\_\_ shopping      8 sp \_\_\_\_\_ English  
 4 l \_\_\_\_\_ in an apartment      9 h \_\_\_\_\_ two children  
 5 g \_\_\_\_\_ up in the morning      10 dr \_\_\_\_\_ tea

c Complete the words.

My wife's a teacher in a school in the city.

- 1 I don't have a job. I'm u \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 He's a w \_\_\_\_\_. He works in a restaurant.  
 3 My grandfather doesn't work now. He's r \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 My sister's a n \_\_\_\_\_. She works in a big hospital.  
 5 He's a j \_\_\_\_\_. He writes for the *New York Times*.

d Write the times.



(a) quarter after ten



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_









4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_

## PRONUNCIATION

a Write the words for the sound pictures.

 bike	3 
1 	4 
2 	5 

b **P p.134-5 Sound Bank** Look at more words with the sounds in a, and these sounds:



Practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

break fast      2 police man      4 usu a ly  
1 po ta toes      3 al ways      5 cer e al

## CAN YOU understand this text?

a Read the text and complete it with words from the list.

coffee diet don't every good hamburgers meat  
potatoes small stop vegetables

## EAT THE JAPANESE WAY

Doctors say that the traditional *diet* in Japan and other Asian countries is very healthy.

### WHY IS IT GOOD FOR YOU?

In Japan, people don't eat a lot of red <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, butter, or cheese. They eat a lot of rice and fish and fresh fruit and <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. This diet is very <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ for your heart and people in Japan live longer than in other countries.



### HOW TO EAT LIKE THE JAPANESE

- ◆ Eat rice with your meals and don't eat a lot of <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, especially French fries.
- ◆ Eat a lot of fish. <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ eat a lot of meat, for example, steak and <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.
- ◆ Eat fresh fruit and vegetables <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ day.
- ◆ Drink green tea, not <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.
- ◆ Eat on <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ plates. Eat slowly. <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ eating when you are full.

b Do you eat "the Japanese way"?

## ▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

▶ 6.20 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



- 1 For breakfast John usually has \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a tea and cereal
  - b tea and toast
  - c coffee and toast
- 2 Josh lives in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a a house in Chinatown
  - b a house near Chinatown
  - c an apartment in Chinatown
- 3 Lisa's son is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a 1
  - b 6
  - c 16
- 4 Susan \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a doesn't work
  - b is a taxi driver
  - c works in an office
- 5 Shrenik gets up at \_\_\_\_\_ during the week.
  - a 5:50 a.m.
  - b 6:50 a.m.
  - c 7:50 a.m.

## CAN YOU say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

Yes, I can.

- 1 say what you do (your job or activity)
- 2 ask what other people do
- 3 say what you have for breakfast
- 4 say what people eat in your country
- 5 ask and say what time it is
- 6 say what you do on a typical day
- 7 ask about other people's days



# 7A

## Have a nice weekend!

What do you do on the weekend?

I usually visit my family.

**G** word order in questions: be and simple present **V** common verb phrases 2: free time **P** /w/, /t/, /s/, and /aʊ/

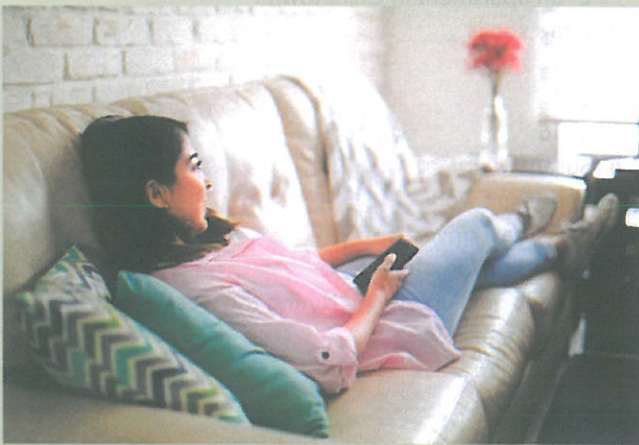
### 1 READING & LISTENING

a Read the article. Then with a partner, complete it with the percentages in the list.

10% 46% 48% 66% 75%

% = percent

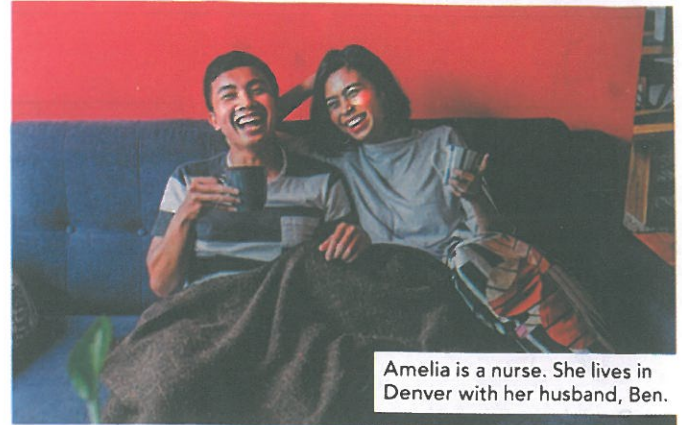
### Most people do the same thing every weekend!



After a hard week at work, the weekend is a time to do something fun and exciting. But a new study says that <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of people do the same activities every Saturday and Sunday. What do they do? <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ go shopping, and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ do housework. And <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ spend the weekend at home. They never leave the house!



b 7.1 Read and listen to the article. Check your answers.



Amelia is a nurse. She lives in Denver with her husband, Ben.

c 7.2 Listen to Amelia talk about her weekend. Are her weekends usually the same?

#### Glossary

**grill** a flat metal frame that you put food on to cook over a fire

d Listen again. When does Amelia do these things? Write **Fr** (Friday), **Sa** (Saturday), or **Su** (Sunday).

- 1  She does housework.
- 2  She gets up at 5:00 a.m.
- 3  She gets up at about 9:00 a.m.
- 4  **Fr** She goes to a restaurant with her husband.
- 5  She goes to the supermarket.
- 6  She has lunch with her sister.
- 7  She meets friends.
- 8  She watches TV.
- 9  She works until 6:00 p.m.

e Do **you** do the same thing every weekend, or are your weekends different?

### 2 VOCABULARY common verb phrases 2: free time

a Look at some sentences from the interview. Can you remember the missing verbs?

- 1 My husband Ben and I always \_\_\_\_\_ out for dinner or a movie.
- 2 We sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ friends there, too.
- 3 In the evening, we usually \_\_\_\_\_ at home and watch TV.

b 7.3 Listen and check.

c p.126 Vocabulary Bank Common verb phrases 2 Do Part 1.

### 3 GRAMMAR word order in questions: be and simple present

- a Re-order the words to make questions. Can you remember Amelia's answers?
- 's favorite what your of weekend part the  
\_\_\_\_\_?
  - tired Sunday on evening you are  
\_\_\_\_\_?
  - Saturday do usually what do you on  
\_\_\_\_\_?
  - do do thing weekend every same you the  
\_\_\_\_\_?

b p.104 Grammar Bank 7A

### 4 PRONUNCIATION /w/, /h/, /ɛr/, and /aʊ/

- a 7.7 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

	<b>witch</b>	what when why walk watch always
	<b>house</b>	how home husband her who
	<b>chair</b>	hair where there their
	<b>owl</b>	how town out mountains

- b 7.8 Listen and repeat the conversations. Then practice them with a partner.

A What do you do on the weekend?  
B I walk, or I watch TV.

A Who's Henry?  
B He's my husband.

A Where do they live?  
B Their house is over there.

A How do you relax?  
B I go to the mountains near my town.

### 5 SPEAKING

- a Look at the questions. What are the missing words? Think about your answers.

Your weekend		Your partner
1 / go out on Friday or Saturday night? Where / go?		
2 / go shopping on Saturday? Where?		
3 / do housework on the weekend?		
4 / play sports or exercise? What / do?		
5 / watch sports on TV? What / watch?		
6 What time / get up on Sunday?		
7 Where / have lunch?		
8 How / relax on the weekend?		
9 / usually tired on Sunday evening? Why?		
10 What time / go to bed?		
11 What / your favorite part of the weekend?		

- b Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Write your partner's answers.

*Do you go out on Friday or Saturday night?*

*(Yes, I usually go out with my friends on Saturday night.)*

*Where do you go?*

*(It depends. To the movies or to a restaurant...)*

- c Find a new partner. Ask and answer some questions about your old partner's weekend.

*Does Marco play sports or exercise on the weekend?*

*(Yes, he does. He goes to the gym on Saturday morning.)*

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 7A

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

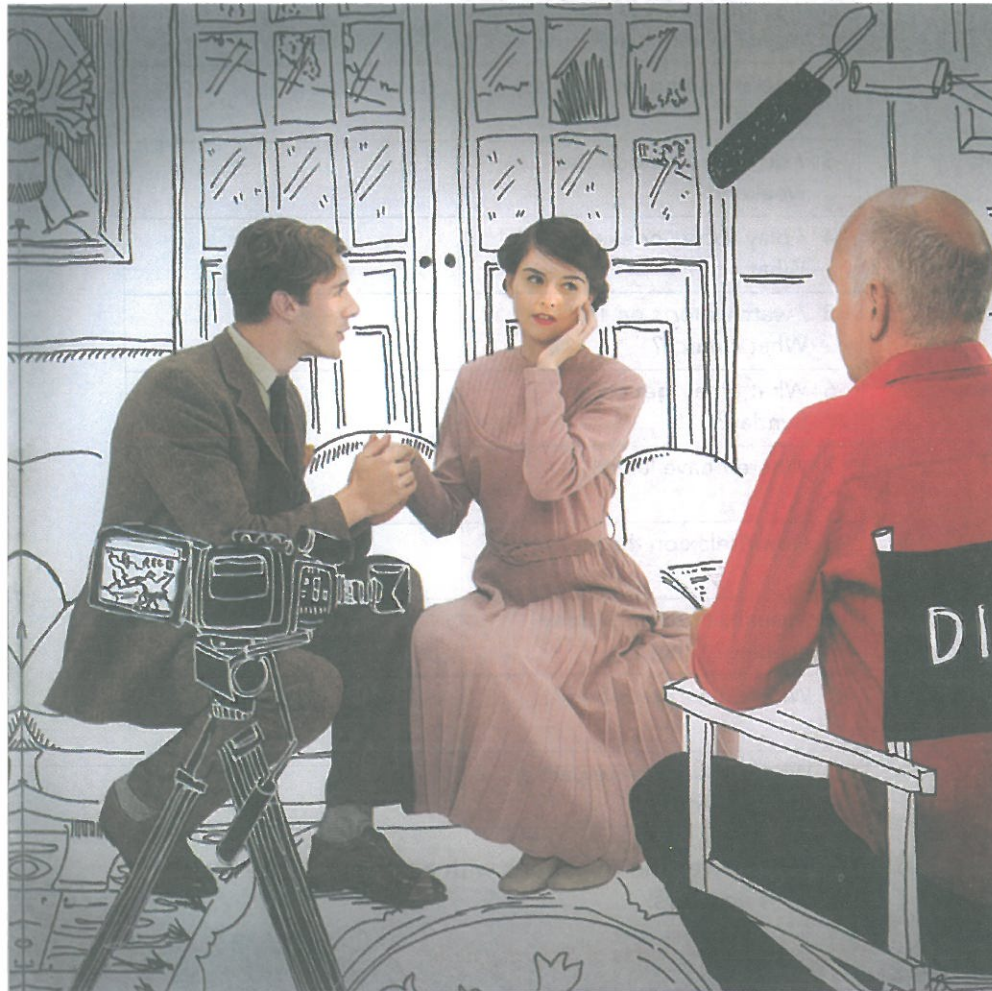
And Ryan?  
Do you love  
him?

Don't talk  
about Ryan!

**G** imperatives, object pronouns: *me, him, etc.* **V** kinds of movies **P** sentence rhythm

### GRAMMAR imperatives, object pronouns: *me, him, etc.*

- a **7.10** Read and listen to a movie director and some actors. Does Scarlett love Sam? Does she love Ryan?



**Director** OK. <sup>1</sup> *Be* quiet, please. Scene one, take one. Lights, camera, ... action!

**Scarlett** Hello, Sam.

**Sam** Hello, Scarlett.

**Scarlett** <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in. Sit down. We need to talk.

**Sam** Talk? What about?

**Scarlett** Us. You and me.

**Sam** <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to me, Scarlett. I love you! Do you love me?

**Scarlett** I don't know, Sam. I need time.

**Sam** And Ryan? Do you love him?

**Scarlett** Don't <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ about Ryan. Yes, I like Ryan, but I don't love him. You don't understand.

**Sam** <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ cry, Scarlett. Please don't cry.

**Director** Cut! Great! I like it.

**Director** OK, Scene two. This is a big scene. Scarlett, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the windows. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ them. Sam, go to Scarlett. <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ next to her. Scarlett, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at him. That's great. Don't move.

**Sam** What do I say to her? I don't remember.

**Director** Nothing. Don't <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ anything. Kiss her.

- b Listen again and complete the conversation.
- c Cover the conversation. Complete the sentences with the words from the list.

him it me me them us you

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 "We need to talk."<br>"Talk? What about?"<br>"Us." | 4 "I like Ryan, but I don't love _____." |
| 2 "Listen to _____, Scarlett."                       | 5 "Great! I like _____."                 |
| 3 "I love _____! Do you love _____?"                 | 6 "Go to the windows. Open _____."       |

- d **7.11** Listen and check.

e **p.104 Grammar Bank 7B**

- f **7.14** Listen and say the object pronoun.

1 *) I (me*

- g **7.15** Listen and change the sentence. Use *him, her, it, or them*.

1 *) I love Scarlett. (I love her.*

- h In groups of three, act out the conversation in a.

## 2 VOCABULARY kinds of movies

a Match the kinds of movies 1–7 to movie titles A–G.

- 1 action movies
- 2 animated movies
- 3 comedies
- 4 dramas
- 5 horror movies
- 6 science fiction movies
- 7 westerns

- A Psycho The Exorcist Friday the 13th
- B The Good, the Bad, and the Ugly The Magnificent Seven Django Unchained
- C Coco Toy Story Frozen
- D Skyfall The Terminator Tomb Raider
- E Meet the Parents Zoolander Mrs. Doubtfire
- F Casablanca The Godfather Forrest Gump
- G Aliens 2001: A Space Odyssey Avatar

b 7.16 Listen and check.

c 7.17 Now listen and repeat the kinds of movies.

## 3 LISTENING

a Look at the movie posters and photos. Do you know the movies and the actors?

b 7.18 Listen to five people answering questions about the *Alien* movies and the actors. Which two speakers like all the movies?

c Listen again. Who or what do the **bold** pronouns refer to?

Speaker 1 It's great.

Speaker 4 I really like **him**. I think **he's** great.

Speaker 2 **She's** OK, but I prefer Sigourney Weaver.

Speaker 5 Sorry, I don't know **them**.

Speaker 3 I think **they're** awful.

d Do you like the movies and the actors?

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sentence rhythm

a 7.19 Listen and repeat the conversations. Copy the rhythm.

A Do you like **Sigourney Weaver**?

B **Yes**, I **do**. She's **very good**.

C Do you like **horror movies**?

D **No**, I **don't like** them. I **prefer dramas**.

E Do you like **Michael Fassbender**?

F **Yes**, I like him a **lot**. I think he's **great**.

b Practice the conversations in a with a partner.

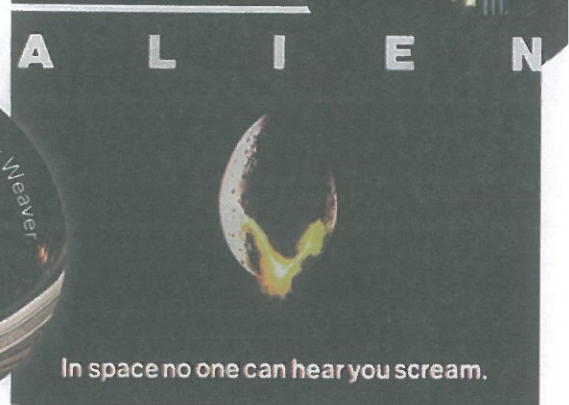
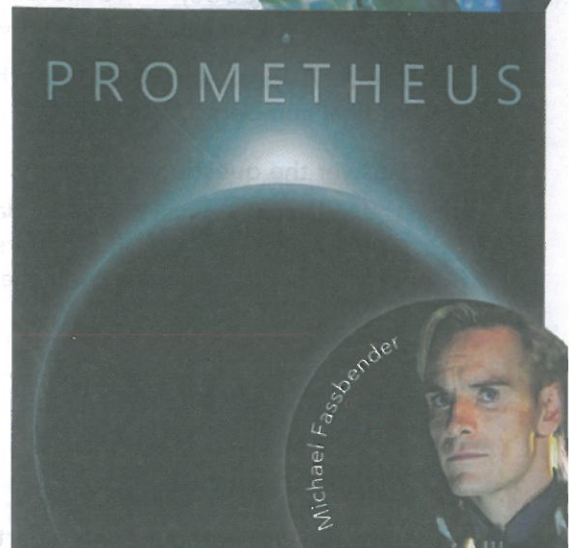
c Write three kinds of movies or movie franchises, three actresses, and three actors in the chart.

Kinds of movies or franchises	Actresses	Actors

d In pairs, ask and answer questions about the people and kinds of movies in the chart.

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 7B

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



saying the date, talking on the phone

V months, ordinal numbers

P /θ/

### 1 VOCABULARY months

a When are these special days? Match them to the month.

- |   |                  |            |
|---|------------------|------------|
| 1 | Independence Day | A January  |
| 2 | New Year's Day   | B February |
| 3 | Halloween        | C July     |
| 4 | Valentine's Day  | D November |
| 5 | Thanksgiving     | E October  |

b **V** p.127 **Vocabulary Bank** Months and ordinal numbers Do Part 1.

c Answer the questions in groups.

- Which month sometimes has 29 days?
- Which month has only three letters?
- Which three months begin with the letter J?
- Which four months end in -er?

### 2 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

ordinal numbers; /θ/

a Take the Ordinals quiz with a partner.

## Ordinals quiz



What's J.K. Rowling's **first** name?

- Janet
- Joanne
- Juliet

What's the **second** meal of the day?

- breakfast
- dinner
- lunch

Which is the **third** book in the *Lord of the Rings* trilogy?

- The Two Towers*
- The Return of the King*
- The Fellowship of the Ring*



What's the **fourth** letter on the top row of a keyboard?

- Q
- R
- T



Which city has a famous street called **Fifth** Avenue?

- New York
- London
- Sydney

Who was the **sixth** president of the US?

- John Quincy Adams
- Abraham Lincoln
- George Washington

b **7.22** Listen and check your answers.

c **V** p.127 **Vocabulary Bank** Months and ordinal numbers Do Part 2.

d **7.25** Listen and repeat the words and sound.



thumb

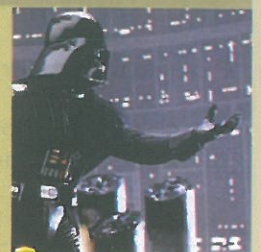
three Thursday third  
seventh ninth

e **7.26** Listen. Say the ordinal number.

one (first)

Which is the **seventh** Star Wars movie?

- The Return of the Jedi*
- Rogue One*
- The Force Awakens*



Which is the **eighth** month of the year?

- July
- August
- September



The **Ninth** Legion was a group of soldiers from...

- Rome
- Greece
- Turkey



### 3 SAYING THE DATE

- a **7.27** Watch or listen to Rob talking to his friend Alan. Complete the conversation.

**Rob** What's the date today?  
**Alan** I think it's the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of June.  
**Rob** Are you sure? Isn't it the <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Alan** No, definitely the <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Rob** Oh no! It's my dad's <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

- b Watch or listen again and repeat the conversation. Then practice it with a partner.
- c **7.28** Watch or listen to Rob and answer the questions.

- Where does Rob go?
- Why does he give his father a present?
- When is his father's birthday?



#### Saying the date

##### You say

April first  
 June second  
 March twenty-third  
 May fourth  
 July twentieth

##### You write

April 1st April 1 4/1  
 June 2nd June 2 6/2  
 March 23rd March 23 3/23  
 May 4th May 4 5/4  
 July 20th July 20 7/20

#### American and British English

*June second* = American English  
*the second of June* = British English

*June 2* = American English  
*2 June* = British English

*6/2* = American English  
*2/6* = British English

- d **7.29** Listen and repeat the dates. Practice saying them.

January 1st	May 11th	September 22nd
February 2nd	June 14th	October 23rd
March 8th	July 18th	November 30th
April 9th	August 20th	December 31st

- e Ask and answer with a partner.

- What's the date today?
- What's the date tomorrow?
- What other dates are holidays in your town (country)?

- f Stand up. Ask other students: *When's your birthday?* Make a class list.

- g Tell a partner three birthdays that are important to you.

*My girlfriend's birthday is September second.*

### 4 TALKING ON THE PHONE

- a **7.30** Watch or listen. Why does Rob call Jenny?



- b Watch or listen again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- Rob thinks Jenny arrives in London on March 20th.
- He thinks she leaves on March 29th.
- It's Thanksgiving in the US.
- Jenny is with her friends.
- Rob needs to call Jenny on Tuesday, December 1st.

#### American and British English Phone language

*Is this Jenny?* = American English  
*Is that Jenny?* = British English

*Yes. Who's this?* = American English  
*Yes. Who's that?* = British English

### 5 USEFUL PHRASES

- 7.31** Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

What's the date today?

Are you sure?

Isn't it the 1st?

It's my dad's birthday.

This is for you.

Happy Birthday!

Is that Jennifer Zielinski?

Yes. Who's that?

We need to talk about your trip to London.

Of course!

Call me on Monday at work.

Talk to you on Tuesday.

# 8A

## Can I **P**ark here?

Can you come on Monday at 8:30?

No, I can't, but I can come at 10:00.

**G** can / can't   **V** more verb phrases   **P** can / can't: /æ/ and /ə/, sentence rhythm

### 1 READING & VOCABULARY

a Read the text and complete the sentences with a country from the list.

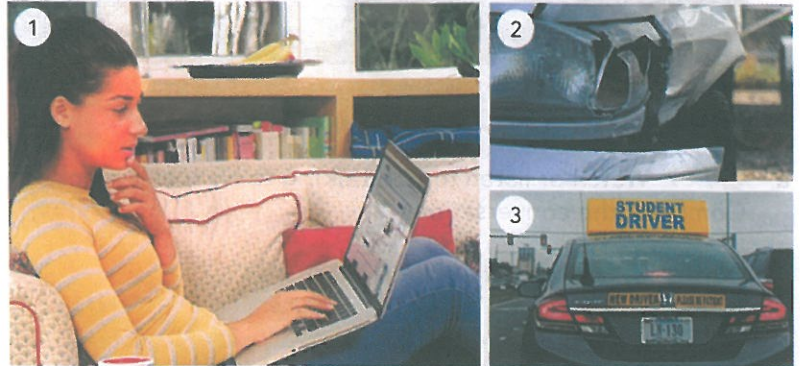
Mexico   Pakistan   South Africa  
the UK   the US

### DRIVING AROUND THE WORLD

- 1 In some states in \_\_\_\_\_, for example Kansas and Idaho, you can get a driver's license when you're 14.
- 2 In some cities in \_\_\_\_\_, you don't need to take a test to get a driver's license. You only need to be 18.
- 3 In \_\_\_\_\_, you can drive when you are 17. First, you need to pass a written test and then you take a driver's test. 47% of people pass the first time.
- 4 In \_\_\_\_\_, the driver's test is very difficult. Only 3% pass the first time.
- 5 In \_\_\_\_\_, the driver's test is very easy and not many people fail. You can take the written test and the driver's test on the same day.

### 2 GRAMMAR can / can't

a Anna wants to learn to drive. Match her tweets to photos 1–3.



- A** Anna Jones @annaj • Jul 19  
Dad's a terrible teacher. I need some lessons with a GOOD driving instructor! Friends, can you help?
- B** Anna Jones @annaj • Jul 18  
An 85 on the written test – amazing! 😊 My first lesson with Dad – total disaster! 😞 Now Dad says I can't practice in his car 😞.
- C** Anna Jones @annaj • Apr 23  
The written test is very difficult. I can practice online, but I can't answer the questions. "Can you turn right at a red light?" I don't know!

b 🎧 8.3 Listen and check.

c 🎧 8.4 Listen to Anna calling a driving instructor. Complete the conversation with verbs from the list.

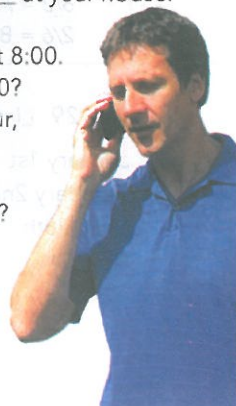
book   come (x2)   help   meet   start

**Instructor** Hello, can I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
**Anna** Yes, can I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ some driving lessons, please?  
**Instructor** Yes, of course.  
**Anna** When can I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Instructor** I'm free on Monday. We can <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at your house.  
**Anna** Can you <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:30?  
**Instructor** No, sorry, I can't. I have a lesson at 8:00.  
**Anna** OK... Can you <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at 10:00?  
**Instructor** Yes, I can. The lessons are one hour, so 10:00 to 11:00, OK?  
**Anna** Great!  
**Instructor** What's your name and address?  
**Anna** It's Anna Jones...

b 🎧 8.1 Listen and check.

c 🎧 8.2 Listen and repeat the highlighted phrases. What's the situation in your country?

*In Colombia, you can get a driver's license when you're 16.*





#### 4 VOCABULARY more verb phrases

a What do these signs mean? Complete the sentences with **can / can't** and a verb from the list.

change drive have park pay play  
swim take use (x2)



- You **can't** swim here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ by credit card here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ your cell phone here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ a coffee here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ the internet here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ photos here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ soccer here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ money here.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ fast here.

b 8.11 Listen and check.

c Cover the sentences and look at the signs. Say what they mean.

#### 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a 8 Communication I'm a tourist. Where can I...?  
A p.80 B p.84 Ask questions about places in a town.

b Write four sentences to give tourists some useful information about what you can (or can't) do in your town.

*You can buy fantastic fruit in the market.*

#### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 8A

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

d 8.5 After three months, Anna takes her driver's test. Listen. Does she pass?



e Read the tweets and the conversation again. Complete the chart.

can / can't	
<input type="checkbox"/>	I <b>can</b> practice online.
<input type="checkbox"/>	I _____ answer the questions.
<input type="checkbox"/>	_____ you come at 8:30?
<input type="checkbox"/>	Yes, I _____.
<input type="checkbox"/>	No, I _____.

f 8 p.106 Grammar Bank 8A

#### 3 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING can / can't: /ə/ and /æ/, sentence rhythm

a 8.7 Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences. Copy the rhythm.

 computer	Where <b>can</b> I park? You <b>can</b> park here.
 cat	Can I <b>park</b> here? <b>Yes</b> , you <b>can</b> . <b>No</b> , you <b>can't</b> . You <b>can't</b> park here.

b 8.8 Listen to the difference between **can** and **can't**.

- a We can park here.      b We can't park here.
- a I can help you.      b I can't help you.
- a You can sit here.      b You can't sit here.
- a Max can go with me.      b Max can't go with me.

c 8.9 Listen. Circle a or b.

d Practice the conversation in 2c with a partner.

e 8.10 Listen to four conversations. Where are the people?

- on a \_\_\_\_\_
- in a \_\_\_\_\_
- in a \_\_\_\_\_
- on the \_\_\_\_\_



Do you like camping?

No, I hate it. I like sleeping in a bed!

**G** like / love / hate + verb + -ing   **V** activities   **P** /ʊ/, /u/, and /ɪ/, sentence rhythm

### 1 VOCABULARY activities



a What are the activities in the photos? Complete the missing letters.

- 1 r \_\_\_\_\_ ing
- 2 s \_\_\_\_\_ ming
- 3 c \_\_\_\_\_ ing

b **V** p.128 Vocabulary Bank Activities

### 2 GRAMMAR like / love / hate + verb + -ing

a Read the profiles of six people from a dating website. In pairs, match the women and men. Say why.

- 1 Isabella and \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Angie and \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Adriana and \_\_\_\_\_

*Isabella and... Because he loves...and she likes...*

b Number the verbs 1–4, from very positive (1) to very negative (4).

□ don't like   □ hate   □ like   □ love

c **G** p.106 Grammar Bank 8B

## Do you like what I like?



**Isabella**

- ♥ I love playing the piano.
- ✓ I like playing sports.
- ✗ I don't like traveling.



**William**

- ♥ I love running and bike riding.
- ✓ I like classical music.
- ✗ ✗ I hate flying.



**Angie**

- ♥ I love buying clothes.
- ✓ I like going to the movies.
- ✗ I don't like reading.



**Daniel**

- ♥ I love cooking.
- ✓ I like camping.
- ✗ I don't like watching TV.



**Adriana**

- ♥ I love walking in the mountains.
- ✓ I like good food.
- ✗ ✗ I hate shopping.






**Luke**

- ♥ I love shopping.
- ✓ I like watching movies.
- ✗ I don't like sports.

### 3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

/ʊ/, /u/, and /ŋ/, sentence rhythm

- a **8.15** Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 bull	book cook look good
 boot	too food soon school
 singer	doing going swimming thing

- b **8.16** Listen and repeat the conversation. Practice it in pairs. Copy the sounds and rhythm.

A I love cooking. What about you?  
 B I like cooking, too.  
 A Do you like reading books?  
 B Yes, I like reading good books.  
 A Do you like bike riding?  
 B Yes, I do. I love bike riding!  
 A Are you single?  
 B No, sorry.

- c In pairs, talk about the activities in **Vocabulary Bank Activities p.128**. Use *love, like, don't like, or hate*.

*I love buying clothes. What about you?*  
 (Me too! I hate camping. What about you?)

### 5 VIDEO LISTENING Singing in a choir

- a Watch the video once. Do you like the song?



### 4 READING & WRITING

- a Read the tweets and complete the missing activities.

#### What do you like doing alone? What do you like doing with friends?

**Reo** I like cooking alone. I don't like having other people in the kitchen. But I like <sup>1</sup>e \_\_\_\_\_ with friends, especially when I'm out. I don't like being alone in a restaurant. #aloneorwithfriends?

**Sarah** I don't like <sup>2</sup>tr \_\_\_\_\_ alone. I prefer going on vacation with friends. But they need to be the right friends! #aloneorwithfriends?

**Mike** I like <sup>3</sup>sh \_\_\_\_\_ with friends. When I go alone, I usually buy things that look horrible on me. I need a second opinion! #aloneorwithfriends?

**Greta** I love <sup>4</sup>d \_\_\_\_\_ alone at home to really old music from the 70s, like ABBA. But I never dance with other people at parties because I know I'm a terrible dancer. #aloneorwithfriends?

**Valentina** I like <sup>5</sup>w \_\_\_\_\_ movies with friends. When the movie ends, we can talk about it, and I like having someone with me so we can be happy or frightened together! #aloneorwithfriends?

**Soo Yun** I like <sup>6</sup>r \_\_\_\_\_ alone. It helps me to concentrate and it's very peaceful! But I prefer <sup>7</sup>g \_\_\_\_\_ for walks with other people because I like walking and talking. #aloneorwithfriends?

**Andy** I like <sup>8</sup>dr \_\_\_\_\_ alone. I love <sup>9</sup>l \_\_\_\_\_ to my favorite music in the car and <sup>10</sup>s \_\_\_\_\_ very loudly – but with the windows closed, of course! #aloneorwithfriends?


- b **8.17** Listen and check. Check (✓) two people you agree with.
- c Compare with a partner. Did you choose the same people?
- d Write your answer to the two questions and give it to your teacher. Play *Guess who?*

- b Watch it again and complete the sentences with one word.

- The choir's name is The \_\_\_\_\_ Gargoyles.
- The choir has \_\_\_\_\_ members.
- They are all \_\_\_\_\_ at Oxford University.
- They all study music except \_\_\_\_\_.
- They practice on \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
- They practice for \_\_\_\_\_ hours.
- They give concerts once a \_\_\_\_\_.
- They give concerts in bars, theaters, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- Steph loves singing \_\_\_\_\_ and opera.
- Freddie thinks everyone can sing because everyone can \_\_\_\_\_.
- Steph likes singing because she feels \_\_\_\_\_ when she sings.
- Tegan prefers singing in a \_\_\_\_\_.

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 8B

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

 **Go online** to watch the video and review the lesson

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 's your name?  
 a Who b **What**
- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ play any sports or exercise?  
 B No, I hate sports and exercise.  
 a Do you b Are you
- 2 What music \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a you like b do you like
- 3 Where's \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a your mother from b from your mother
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ meat?  
 a Your sister eats b Does your sister eat
- 5 The meeting's at 6:00. \_\_\_\_\_ late.  
 a Don't be b Not be
- 6 We're lost. Please help \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a us b our
- 7 My brother has a new girlfriend, but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ very much.  
 a him b her
- 8 They're beautiful shoes. I love \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a it b them
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ park here?  
 a Can I b Do I can
- 10 Sorry, you \_\_\_\_\_ photos here.  
 a can't to take b can't take
- 11 A Can they come to dinner tomorrow?  
 B No, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a can't b don't
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ Lisa sit here?  
 a Can b Cans
- 13 Do you like \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a read b reading
- 14 I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ up early.  
 a geting b getting
- 15 I hate \_\_\_\_\_ on the weekend.  
 a studying b studing

## VOCABULARY

a Complete the verbs.

- For my mom's birthday, I always **make** a big chocolate cake.
- 1 I always **pl** \_\_\_\_\_ computer games after school.  
 2 Can I **p** \_\_\_\_\_ by credit card?  
 3 In summer, we **c** \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains, but in the winter we **sk** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 4 I sometimes **m** \_\_\_\_\_ my friends after work and we **g** \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies.  
 5 Mary doesn't usually **g** \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach because she can't **sw** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 6 I **d** \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of yoga, and I **pl** \_\_\_\_\_ tennis every Monday and Thursday.

b Write the next word.

- first, second, *third*
- 1 fifth, sixth, \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 tenth, eleventh, \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 eighteenth, nineteenth, \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 twenty-ninth, thirtieth, \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 January, February, \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 March, April, \_\_\_\_\_  
 7 May, June, \_\_\_\_\_  
 8 September, October, \_\_\_\_\_

c Write the activities.



bike riding



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_



7 \_\_\_\_\_

## PRONUNCIATION

a Write the words for the sound pictures.

	bike	3	
1 		4	
2 		5	

b **P p.134-5 Sound Bank** Look at more words with the sounds in in a, and these sounds:



Practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

- relax 1 thirtieth 2 January 3 July 4 seven teenth 5 sing le

**CAN YOU** understand this text?



**Come to Philadelphia and be inspired!**

When you are on vacation in the US, don't forget to visit Philadelphia in the state of Pennsylvania. If you like eating out, visiting places of interest, or exercising, we have something for everybody!

1 \_\_\_\_\_

This is one of Philadelphia's oldest attractions. Here you can try all kinds of different local food, and if you like cooking, you can buy wonderful products to take home. You can also listen to live music. The market is open every day except on US holidays.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

The museum is situated near the Schuylkill River in beautiful Fairmont Park and is home to an amazing collection of art. It's also famous for the "Rocky Steps" and "Rocky Statue" from the *Rocky* movie franchise, starring Sylvester Stallone. Bring your camera and act out the famous movie scene of Rocky running up the museum steps to train for his fight.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

Philadelphia is famous for its professional sports franchises like the Eagles (American football), the Phillies (baseball), the Sixers (basketball), and the Flyers (ice hockey). The stadiums for each team are very close to one another. Getting to a game can be difficult, so take the train. Don't drive!

**a** Read the website and match the headings.

- Professional sports
- Reading Terminal Market
- The Philadelphia Museum of Art

**b** Read again and check (✓) if you can find the information.

- 1  You can buy very cheap food in the market.
- 2  Musicians play in the market.
- 3  You can go to the market on a Tuesday.
- 4  The *Philadelphia Museum of Art* is very new.
- 5  It's OK to take pictures on the "Rocky Steps."
- 6  The Sixers and the Flyers play in the same stadium.
- 7  You can't drive to a professional sports game.

**▶ CAN YOU** understand these people?

**▶ 8.19** Watch or listen and answer the questions.



1 Spencer    2 Sahil    3 Monica    4 Brian    5 Richard

- 1 Spencer usually \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.
  - a plays sports
  - b does housework
  - c makes dinner
- 2 Sahil likes watching \_\_\_\_\_ at the movie theater
  - a comedies
  - b action movies
  - c animated movies
- 3 Monica's birthday is on \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a May 1st
  - b May 5th
  - c May 15th
- 4 Brian takes the train to work \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a for 2 hours in each direction
  - b two days a week
  - c 20 minutes in each direction
- 5 One thing Richard likes doing on the weekend is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a running
  - b making meals
  - c buying clothes

**CAN YOU** say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?	Yes, I can.
1 talk about what you do in your free time	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 give instructions and orders, e.g., "Sit down."	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 talk about movies and actors that you like	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 say the date	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 say what people can / can't do in your town	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 talk about activities you like / love / hate doing	<input type="checkbox"/>



**Go online** to watch the video, review Files 7 & 8, and check your progress

# 9A

## Everything's fine!

What are you doing?

I'm playing a video game.

**G** present continuous **V** common verb phrases 2: traveling **P** sentence rhythm

### 1 GRAMMAR present continuous

- a **9.1** Amy is in Mexico on business. Her husband and family are at home in the US. Listen to and read the conversation. Underline three things Tony says that are not true.

Amy Hello? Tony?  
 Tony Oh, hi, honey. How's Mexico City?  
 Amy Good, good. **I'm staying** in a nice hotel – but **it's raining**. Can you hear it?  
 Tony Yes, yes, I can.  
 Amy How are the children?  
 Tony Oh, they're fine.  
 Amy Where are they? **What are they doing?**  
 Tony Lily's in the living room. **She's doing** her homework.  
 Amy And Matt and Josh?  
 Tony They're in their bedroom. **They're reading**.  
 Amy I think I can hear them. Are you sure they're reading?  
 Tony Yes, yes. That noise is the TV. **Your mother's watching** a movie.

Amy What about you? Are you OK?  
 Tony I'm fine. **I'm making** dinner – fish and vegetables.  
 Amy Oh great! Very healthy. OK honey, I need to go now. See you on Tuesday.  
 Tony Have a good day tomorrow. Bye.

- b Look at the **highlighted** verbs in the conversation. Then read the rule below and **circle** a or b.

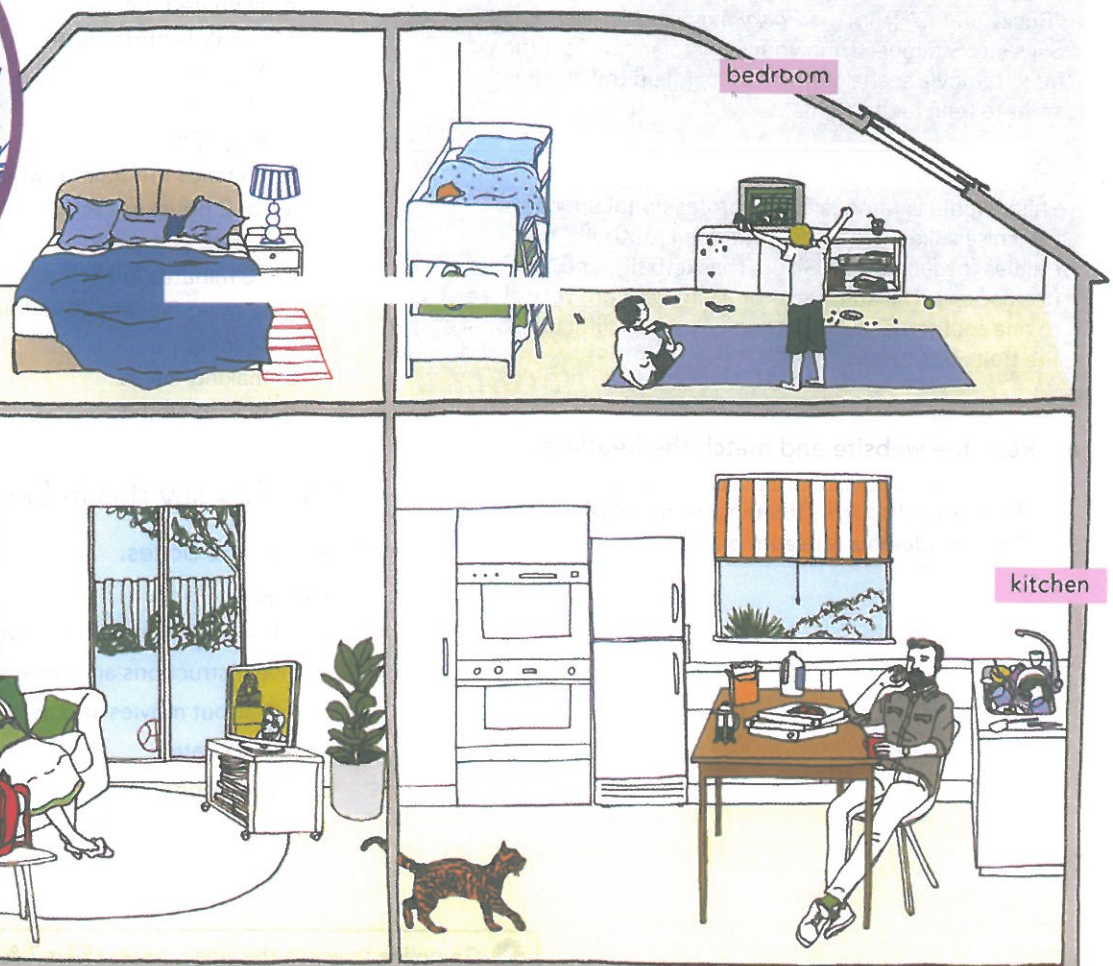
We use the present continuous (am/is/are + verb + -ing) to talk about **a** every day, **b** now.

- c **9.2** Listen. What's Tony doing this evening?  
 d **9.3** Listen. What's Tony doing this evening?

1 He's reading a story.

- e Think about your home. Who do you think is there? Where are they? What are they doing?

I think my brother's in his bedroom. He's sleeping.



## 2 PRONUNCIATION sentence rhythm

a **9.4** Listen and repeat the conversation.

- A What are you **doing**?  
 B I'm **making dinner**.  
 A Are the **children doing** their **homework**?  
 B **No**, they **aren't**. They're **watching TV**.  
 A What's your **mother doing**?  
 B She's **helping** me.

b Practice the conversation in 1a with a partner.

c Look at pictures 1–6. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.



Picture 1. What's she doing? ( She's...

Picture 2. What are they doing? ( They're...

## 3 VOCABULARY & LISTENING common verb phrases 2: traveling

a Look at the picture of Amy in 1a. Complete the missing verbs.

- Amy is **st**\_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel.
- She's **c**\_\_\_\_\_ her husband.

b **p.126 Vocabulary Bank** Common verb phrases 2 Do Part 2.

c **9.6** Listen to four conversations. What are the people doing?

- The man and the woman are \_\_\_\_\_.
- The woman is \_\_\_\_\_.
- The man \_\_\_\_\_.
- The man and the woman \_\_\_\_\_.

d Listen again and **circle** the correct answer.

- Henry's present is a *soccer ball* / *soccer shirt* and Jessica's is a *bag* / *T-shirt*.
- Their hotel *has* / *doesn't have* a swimming pool.
- The man is interested in a *small* / *big* all-wheel drive car for *three* / *five* days.
- The first bus is a number *23* / *25*. They are waiting for a number *13* / *30*.

## 4 READING

a Mike and Lina are going to the movies together. Read Mike's messages to Lina. Then match her answers to each message 1–5.

- Hi. I'm just leaving the house now.
- No, I'm not. I'm riding my bike. See you in 20 minutes?
- Where are you? I'm at the movie theater, but I can't see you. I'm waiting outside.
- It's really cold outside. I'm going in.
- I'm standing near the box office. I'm wearing a black jacket. Can you see me?

- A I'm arriving at the movie theater now. Where are you?  
 B Me too. I'm walking to the bus stop. Are you taking the bus, too?  
 C Sorry, we're in a lot of traffic. There in five minutes.  
 D OK. See you then.  
 E Yes, I can! Can you see me? I'm walking towards you now!

b **9.7** Listen and check.

c Read the messages again. Find a word or phrase that means:

- the place where you wait for a bus: \_\_\_\_\_
- the opposite of *inside*: \_\_\_\_\_
- a lot of cars, buses, etc.: a lot of \_\_\_\_\_
- the place where you buy movie tickets: \_\_\_\_\_
- to walk in the direction of somebody: to walk \_\_\_\_\_ somebody

d **9.8** Listen and check.

## 5 SPEAKING

**Communication** The same or different? **A p.80 B p.84** Say what the people are doing in the pictures.

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 9A

**p.132** Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

**Go online** to review the lesson

# 9B

## Working undercover

What are you doing today?

I usually go to the office, but today I'm working at home.

**G** present continuous or simple present? **V** clothes **P** /əɪ/, other vowel sounds

### 1 READING

- a Look at the two photos of David Clarke. Where do you think he usually works? Where is he working today?



## Undercover Boss

**Undercover Boss** is a TV show where different bosses work undercover. They want to know more about their workers and about problems in their companies. In **Episode 1**, David Clarke, the manager of a big hotel chain, is working "undercover" for a week in one of his hotels.



- b **9.10** Read and listen to a text about the TV show *Undercover Boss*. Why is David working undercover?
- c **9.11** Read and listen to the Episode 1 summary. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).
- The workers don't know that "Andy" is their boss.
  - On Monday, David is cooking in the kitchen.
  - The people in the kitchen work long hours.
  - He likes the food in the hotel.
  - On Tuesday, the workers are repairing things in all the rooms.
  - On Wednesday, David is making breakfast.
  - The workers only have 30 minutes to clean rooms.
  - David thinks that cleaning rooms is easy.
- d What do you think David does on Friday? Turn to p.85 **Communication Undercover Boss** and check.
- e Do you think *Undercover Boss* is a good idea for a TV show?

### Episode 1 summary

**Monday** David says that he's a new worker and that his name is "Andy". The other workers don't know who he really is. He usually wears a suit, but today he's wearing jeans and a T-shirt. He's working in the kitchen. He's washing the dishes. The people in the kitchen usually work 80 hours a week! One of the ovens isn't working, but David thinks that the food is good.



**Tuesday** Today, he's working in the bedrooms. Next week, there is a hotel inspection. The workers are repairing things that are broken, but only in the rooms for the hotel inspector. They aren't repairing things in the other rooms. David isn't happy about this, but he can't say anything.

**Wednesday** Today, David is working in the restaurant. He's serving breakfast. He's wearing a white jacket and a hat. The waiters and waitresses always work very hard.

**Thursday** David is cleaning rooms. The workers only have fifteen minutes to clean a room. David is working very hard. He's very tired.

## 2 GRAMMAR present continuous or simple present?

- a Look at two sentences about David Clarke. Complete the sentences with the simple present or present continuous of *work* and *wear*.

He usually <sup>1</sup> *works* in an office, but today he <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel.  
 He usually <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a suit, but today he <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ jeans and a T-shirt.

- b **9.12** Listen and check.  
 c Complete the rules with *every day* and *today / now*.  
 Use the simple present to talk about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Use the present continuous to talk about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 d **p.108 Grammar Bank 9B**

## 3 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION clothes; /əɪ/, other vowel sounds

- a Look at some clothes words from the text in 1. Match them to the photos.



a hat    a jacket    jeans    a suit    a T-shirt

- b **p.129 Vocabulary Bank Clothes**  
 c **9.15** Listen and repeat the words and sound.

	bird	shirt	skirt	T-shirt	serve	work
--	------	-------	-------	---------	-------	------

- d Put the clothes words in the correct column.

cap   coat   dress   hat   jacket   jeans   shoes   sneakers   suit   sweater

egg	boot	cat	phone	tree

- e **9.16** Listen and check.  
 f Practice saying the sentences.

I'm wearing...  
 a shirt and a skirt      an old coat      clean jeans  
 a red sweater          a black jacket      green sneakers  
 a new suit              blue shoes

## 4 LISTENING & SPEAKING



- a Look at the photos and read about Neah. Do high school and college students do internships in your country?  
 b **9.17** Listen to an interview with Neah. Is she positive or negative about her work experience?  
 c Listen again and answer the questions.  
 1 What kinds of clothes does Rue21 have?  
 2 What does Neah do in the store?  
 3 What does Neah like about the job?  
 4 What doesn't she like?  
 5 What can Neah do when she finishes her work experience?  
 6 Where are the clothes she is wearing today from?  
 d Talk to a partner.  
 1 What are you wearing today?  
 2 What colors do you like wearing?  
 3 What clothes do you usually wear...?  
 - in the summer  
 - in the winter  
 - to work / school  
 - for a party

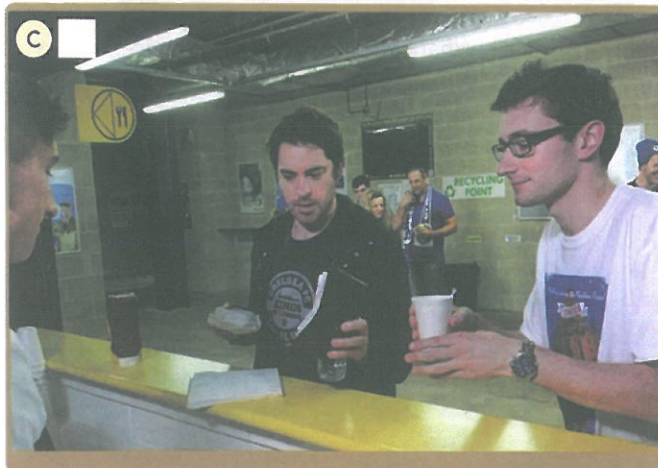
## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 9B

- p.132** Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



1 INVITING AND OFFERING

a 9.19 Watch or listen. Number the photos 1–3.



b Watch or listen again and complete the conversations.

- 1 Rob Hey, Alan. **Would you like** to come to the 1 \_\_\_\_\_ with me on 2 \_\_\_\_\_? It's Norwich against Chelsea, and I have two tickets.  
 Alan Wow! What time's the match?  
 Rob It's at 3 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Alan Yeah, I'd love to. Thanks.  
 Rob **Would you like** to meet for 4 \_\_\_\_\_ first?  
 Alan Sorry, I can't. It's my mum's 5 \_\_\_\_\_, and I need to have lunch with her. But I can meet you there.  
 Rob Great. Let's meet at 6 \_\_\_\_\_ at the entrance to the Tube station.  
 Alan Fine. See you there.
- 2 Alan They are playing really badly. I hope the second half is better.  
 Rob Me too. I 7 \_\_\_\_\_ they can win. **Would you like** a 8 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Alan No, thanks. I'm not very 9 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Rob How about a 10 \_\_\_\_\_?  
 Alan Yeah, great.
- Rob A burger and a 11 \_\_\_\_\_, please.  
 Alan **And I'd like** a 12 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Server 13 \_\_\_\_\_ and sugar?  
 Alan Yes, please.

**Glossary**  
**the entrance** the door where you go into a place  
**the Tube** the London subway  
**match** (sports) a game between two people or teams

c Look at the **highlighted** phrases. What do you think *Would you like?* and *I'd like* mean?

**Would you like...?**  
**Would you like + noun**  
*Would you like a burger?*  
 Yes, please. No, thanks.  
**I'd like (= I would like) + noun**  
*I'd like a burger, please.*  
*I'd like a coffee, please.*  
**Would you like to + verb**  
*Would you like to come to the match?*  
 Yes, I'd love to. Sorry, I can't.  
**Compare**  
*Do you like dancing?* = in general  
*Would you like to dance?* = invitation

come?

## 2 PRONUNCIATION sentence rhythm

a 9.20 Listen and repeat.

a pizza

→ like a pizza

→ Would you like a pizza?

see a movie

→ to see a movie

→ Would you like to see a movie?

b Work in pairs. Use the photos. Ask a partner.

(Would you like a...?)



(Would you like to go to a...?)



c In pairs, practice the conversations in 1b. Change roles.

## 3 MEETING AN OLD FRIEND

a 9.21 Jenny meets her ex-boyfriend Steve, a journalist, on the street. Watch or listen. What three things does Steve invite Jenny to do?



b Watch or listen again. Circle the right answer.

- 1 Jenny is looking well / tired.
- 2 It's raining / starting to rain.
- 3 Jenny's meeting is in half an hour / an hour.
- 4 Jenny can / can't go to the exhibition.
- 5 Jenny thinks it is / isn't a good idea to meet Steve one evening.

## 4 USEFUL PHRASES

9.22 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

Would you like to come to the match with me?

Yeah, I'd love to.

Let's meet at half past three.

See you there.

Would you like a burger?

How about a coffee?

I'd like to ask you something.

I don't think it's a good idea.

## 5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a 9.23 Listen and repeat the conversations. Then practice them with a partner.

1 A Would you like to come to a party at my house?

B Yes, I'd love to. Thanks! When is it?

A It's on Friday at 8:00.

B Great! See you there.

2 A Would you like to come to a party on Saturday?

B Sorry, I can't. I'm busy on Saturday night.

b Imagine it's your party. Choose a day and time. Invite your partner. Can he or she come?

c Invite the other students in your class. How many people can come?

d p.87 Writing An email Write an email to invite someone to do something.

Go online to watch the video and review the lesson

# 10A A room with a view

Is there wi-fi?

Yes, there is. There's wi-fi in every room in the hotel.

**G** there's a... / there are some... **V** hotels, in, on, under **P** /ɪr/ and /ɜr/

## 1 READING & VOCABULARY hotels

- a **10.1** Read and listen to the tourist information about Burlington, Vermont and Lake Champlain. Would you like to go to Vermont? What would you like to see and do there?

### VISIT VERMONT

Vermont is one of the US's top tourist destinations, with 140 mountain peaks, 50 ski areas, 46 lakes, interesting museums, and beautiful cities and towns. There's something for visitors of all ages.

### WHY LAKE CHAMPLAIN?

Lake Champlain is a 125-mile long lake that sits between the states of Vermont and New York. You can take a boat trip on the lake and visit the ECHO, Leahy Center for Lake Champlain to find out all about the lake and "Champ," the monster. One of the most famous ice-cream makers in the US, Ben and Jerry's, is very close to the lake shore. There are also wonderful places for walking and bike riding nearby.



### ACCOMMODATIONS

Stay at the **Hotel Vermont**. It's the perfect place for a great view of the lake.



**Hotel Vermont**  
A friendly hotel with fantastic views of Lake Champlain.  
**Reservations:** 855-655-0085  
**Email:** info@hotelvt.com

- b Look at the bedroom. Match the words to 1–5.

a bed  a chair  a lamp  a table  a window

- c **p.130 Vocabulary Bank Hotels**

## 2 GRAMMAR there's a... / there are some...

- a **10.4** Louisa and Eric are tourists on vacation in Vermont. They arrive at the Hotel Vermont. Listen and check (✓) the things the hotel has and cross out (X) the things it doesn't have.

an elevator  a good view  TV  
 wi-fi  a restaurant  a bathtub  
 a gift shop

- b Listen again and read the conversation on p.61. Look at the **highlighted** phrases. Circle a or b in the three sentences below. How do you make questions and negatives with *There is / There are*?

- 1 Use *there's a / an* + a singular nouns b plural nouns.
- 2 Use *there are some* + a singular nouns b plural nouns.
- 3 Use *any* (not *some*) in: a affirmative sentences b negative sentences and questions.

- c **10.5** Listen. What do Louisa and Eric see? What do they do? Do you think that there's a monster in the lake?

- d **p.110 Grammar Bank 10A**

- e Practice the conversation in 2b in groups of three.

- f In pairs, write true (+) or false (-) sentences.

### Your classroom

TV pictures windows whiteboard  
DVD player computer chairs  
dictionaries

### Your school

library café parking lot yard



*There's a TV.* ( *There are some pictures.*

*There aren't any windows.*)



### 3 PRONUNCIATION /ɪr/ and /ɛr/

a 10.7 Listen and repeat the words and sounds.

 ear	near here
 chair	wear there

**Same spelling, different sound**  
The same letters can have different pronunciations, e.g., ere and ear can be /ɪr/, e.g., here, near, or /ɛr/ e.g., there, wear.

b 10.8 Listen and write the words in the correct row.

airport dear hair hear repair their very  
we're where year

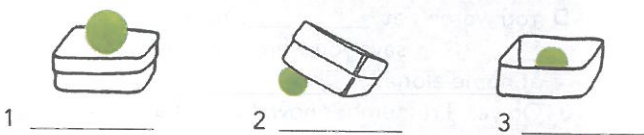
c 10.9 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

d Practice saying the sentences.  
Here's your coffee, dear. There's a chair over there.  
It's near the end of the year. Where's the airport?

### 4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

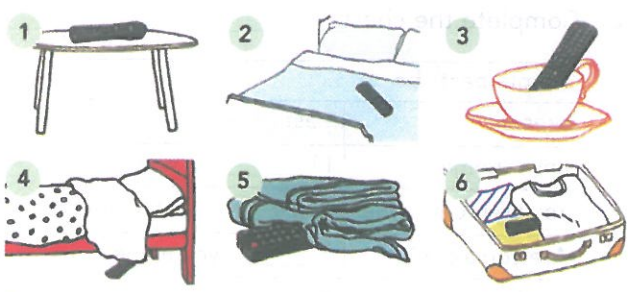
*in, on, under*

a Write *in, on, or under* for pictures 1–3.



b In pairs, ask and answer questions about the remote control.

Picture 1: Where's the remote control? (It's on the table.)



c **Communication** Is there a TV? Where is it?  
A p.80 B p.84 Ask and answer about things in hotel rooms.

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 10A

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

**Eric** Hello. Do you have a room for tonight?  
**Receptionist** Let's see. Yes, there's a room on the third floor.  
**Louisa** Great! Can we see it?  
**R** Of course. Come with me.  
**E** Is there an elevator?  
**R** Yes, there is. Follow me.  
**R** This is the room.  
**L** It's beautiful! I love it.  
**E** Yes, and there's a great view of Lake Champlain.  
**R** The remote control for the TV is on the table.  
**E** Is there wi-fi?  
**R** Yes, there is. There's wi-fi in every room in the hotel.  
This is the bathroom. There's a shower, but there isn't a bathtub.  
**E** Is there a restaurant? We're very hungry.  
**R** Yes, there are two restaurants in the hotel. There are also some great cafés in town.  
**L** Are there any stores in the hotel?  
**R** No, there aren't any stores in the hotel.  
**E** OK, thanks. I have one more question.  
**R** Yes?  
**E** Is there really a monster in Lake Champlain?  
**R** Well, some people say there is and some people say there isn't. Enjoy your stay. Breakfast is at 7:00.

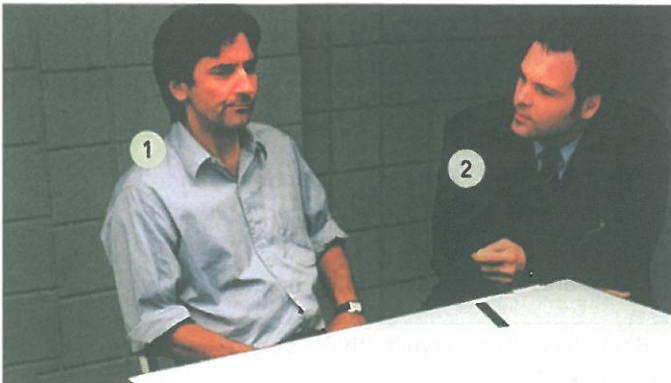
# 10B Where were you?

Where were you?

I was at home.

**G** simple past: be **V** in, on, at **P** was and were, sentence rhythm

## 1 GRAMMAR simple past: be



- a Last night there was a robbery in a bank. Jason Brown is a suspect. Look at the photo. Which person is Jason, which person is a detective?
- b **10.11** Listen to the interview. Fill in the blanks.

D Where were you at <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock last night?  
 J I was at <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 D You weren't at <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Your <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ says you were out. She was at home alone.  
 J Oh yes, I remember now. I was at a <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 D Were you <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?  
 J No, I wasn't. I was with a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Walter Miller. You can ask him.

- c Complete the chart.

simple past: be	
present	past
I'm at home.	I <sup>1</sup> _____ at home.
You aren't at home.	You <sup>2</sup> _____ at home.
Are you alone?	<sup>3</sup> _____ you alone?
No, I'm not.	No, I <sup>4</sup> _____.

- d **Gp.110 Grammar Bank 10B**
- e **10.13** Listen and say the sentences in the past.

1 ) She's a teacher. (She was a teacher.

## 2 LISTENING

- a **10.14** Listen to the detective interviewing Jason's friend, Kevin. Complete the information.

Name: Walter Miller  
 Job: <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
 Address: <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Market Street  
 Walter knows Jason because they were <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ together.  
 At 5:00 yesterday afternoon, he was in his <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 At 7:00, he was in the <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant on South <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
 He was with Jason. His <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ were there, too.

- b Listen again. Why does the detective think that Walter's story isn't true?

## 3 VOCABULARY in, on, at

- a Look at Walter and Jason's answers. What are the missing words?
- 1 Where were you yesterday afternoon at five o'clock?  
 I was \_\_\_\_\_ my taxi.
- 2 Where were you at seven o'clock last night?  
 I was \_\_\_\_\_ home.
- b Complete the chart with *in, on, or at*.

Where were you yesterday at 7.00 p.m.?			
I was	<sup>1</sup> _____	<sup>2</sup> _____	<sup>3</sup> _____
home	bed	a bus	
work	the kitchen	a train	
school	my car	a plane	
college	New York	a boat	
	the park	the street	
	a meeting		
	a restaurant		
	a museum		
	a shopping mall		
	a hotel		

- c **10.15** Listen and check. Repeat the sentences.
- d Test a partner. **A** (book open) say a place. **B** (book closed) say the phrase. Then change.

the kitchen ) ( in the kitchen

e 10.16 The next day, Jason and Walter were in prison. But where was Jason's wife? Listen and complete the sentences.





- 1 At 6:00, *she was in bed.*
- 2 At 8:00, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 At 11:00, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 At 3:00, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 At 5:00, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 At 7:00, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 At 11:00, \_\_\_\_\_ again!



#### 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING was and were, sentence rhythm



a 10.17 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm.



A Where were you at **seven o'clock yesterday morning**?  
 B I was at **home**.  
 A Were you in **bed**?  
 B **Yes, I was**.  
 A Where were you at **ten o'clock**?  
 B I was in a **café** with **friends**.  
 A Were you **there** all **morning**?  
 B **No, we weren't**. We were **there** for an **hour**.

b With a partner, ask and answer the questions.

1 Where were you yesterday at  in the morning?  


2 Where were you yesterday at  in the afternoon?  


3 Where were you at  last night?  


4 Where were you last  night?  


#### 5 VIDEO LISTENING

A building with a past



a Watch the video *A building with a past*. What kind of building is it? Where is it? Why is it famous?

##### Glossary

**safe deposit box** a metal box for storing valuable things

**vault** a room with strong walls for keeping money, e.g. in a bank

b Watch again. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- 1 The building is on Fifth Avenue in New York City.
- 2 It has great views of Bryant Park.
- 3 In the past, it was home to movie star Audrey Hepburn.
- 4 There was a robbery in the hotel in 1972.
- 5 The jewelry was in the vault.
- 6 The robbers were in the building for two and a half hours.
- 7 The hotel has five different restaurants.
- 8 There are 189 bedrooms.
- 9 The rooms at this hotel have televisions.

c Would you like to stay at the hotel? Why (not)?

#### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 10B

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

# 9 & 10 Review and Check

## GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 's your name?  
a Who b **What**
- 1 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ right now?  
a work b **working**
- 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ staying in a very good hotel.  
a isn't b **doesn't**
- 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ his homework now.  
a doing b **is doing**
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ raining?  
B No, it isn't.  
a Is it b **It's**
- 5 Can you talk now, or \_\_\_\_\_?  
a are you driving b **do you drive**
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ to work by train?  
a Do you usually go  
b **Are you usually going**
- 7 I usually wear jeans, but today \_\_\_\_\_ a skirt.  
a I wear b **I'm wearing**
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ two beds in the room.  
a There is b **There are**
- 9 There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ windows.  
a some b **any**
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ any towels in the bathroom?  
a Are there b **There are**
- 11 Is there a swimming pool? Yes, \_\_\_\_\_  
a there's b **there is**
- 12 It \_\_\_\_\_ very hot last summer.  
a was b **were**
- 13 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you yesterday at six o'clock?  
a was b **were**
- 14 Karen \_\_\_\_\_ at school yesterday.  
a wasn't b **not was**
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ at home last night?  
a They were b **Were they**

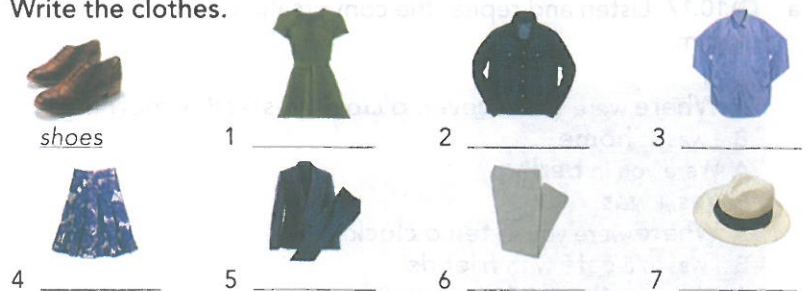
## VOCABULARY

a Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

arriving calling carrying staying waiting wearing

- We're *staying* in a beautiful hotel in the mountains.
- 1 A What are you doing here?  
B I'm \_\_\_\_\_ for my girlfriend. She's late.
- 2 A Who are you \_\_\_\_\_? B My mother. It's her birthday.
- 3 Go and help that woman. She's \_\_\_\_\_ a very big suitcase.
- 4 Look! The train's \_\_\_\_\_. Can you see it?
- 5 Why are you \_\_\_\_\_ sunglasses? It's 11:00 in the evening!

b Write the clothes.



c Complete the words.

Would you like to have dinner in the hotel *restaurant*?

- 1 When you arrive at a hotel you go to r\_\_\_\_\_ to check in.
- 2 You're in room 1122. Take the e\_\_\_\_\_ to the 11th floor.
- 3 I want to buy some presents. Is there a g\_\_\_\_\_ sh\_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 The b\_\_\_\_\_ 's small. There's a shower, but there isn't a bathtub.
- 5 You can leave your car in the hotel p\_\_\_\_\_ l\_\_\_\_\_.

d Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with *in*, *on*, or *under*.

The book is *on* the chair.

- 1 The suitcase is \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
- 2 The laptop is \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
- 3 The lamps are \_\_\_\_\_ the tables.
- 4 The boots are \_\_\_\_\_ the chair.
- 5 The suitcases are \_\_\_\_\_ the closet.









e Complete with *at*, *in*, or *on*.

Oh no! The keys are *in* my car.

- 1 A Where's your mother? B I think she's \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen.
- 2 A Mike? It's Tim. B Sorry, I can't hear you. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a train.
- 3 A Is John here today?  
B No, he's \_\_\_\_\_ home. One of his children isn't well.

## PRONUNCIATION

a Write the words for the sound pictures.

 bike	3 
1 	4 
2 	5 

b **P p.134–5 Sound Bank** Look at more words with the sounds in a, and these sounds:









Practice saying the example words.

c **Underline the stressed syllable.**

- |                   |                       |                      |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| swe <u>a</u> ter  | 2 a <u>r</u> rive     | 4 clo <u>s</u> et    |
| 1 tra <u>v</u> el | 3 re <u>s</u> taurant | 5 re <u>c</u> eption |

## CAN YOU understand this text?

a Jenna and Max are going to New Orleans for the weekend. Read Jenna's tweets and number them 1–6.

- A  Our first dinner! 😊 We're having an amazing dinner in a restaurant in the French Quarter, near the hotel. I love the "gumbo" (a thick fish soup) and the rice and beans.
- B  Our last morning! I don't want to go home! 😞 Maybe I can get a job in New Orleans?
- C  We're now at the hotel. Our room's great. There's a balcony and a view of Louis Armstrong Park! I'm taking photos of everything for my blog.
- D  We're in the NOMA sculpture garden, looking at Robert Indiana's "Love" sculpture. I love it! Then we're going to the river for lunch! 🍽️
- E  The gumbo was great. We're now lying on our bed watching a football game — the New Orleans Saints and the Tampa Bay Buccaneers. Come on, New Orleans! But Max prefers Tampa Bay...
- F  We're waiting for the taxi to arrive and feeling a little nervous! Our flight's at 10:30. Please hurry, taxi driver! New Orleans, here we come!

b Match the photos to the highlighted phrases in the tweets.



**CAN YOU** understand these people?

10.19 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



Daniel Julie Jayna Rytis Spencer

- Today Daniel is \_\_\_\_ in New York.
  - seeing a friend
  - visiting a museum
  - doing some work
- Julie usually wears \_\_\_\_ for work.
  - shorts and a top
  - a skirt and a sweater
  - a skirt and a top
- Jayna would like to live in England because she likes \_\_\_\_\_.
  - its people
  - its weather
  - its history
- Rytis's hotel is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - in a great location
  - not very nice
  - quiet and clean
- Last night at 10 o'clock Spencer was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - at home
  - in a hotel
  - in a pub

## CAN YOU say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

Yes, I can.

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1 talk about what you're doing now               | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 say what you're wearing                        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 say what you would like to do                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 identify things in a hotel room                | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 ask about facilities in a hotel                | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 say where you were yesterday, last night, etc. | <input type="checkbox"/> |



# 11A

## A new life in the US

Did you decide to go to the US?

Yes, we did. We wanted to live abroad.

**G** simple past: regular verbs **V** regular verbs **P** regular simple past endings

### 1 GRAMMAR simple past: regular verbs

#### a 11.1 Read and listen to Dominic. Choose a or b.

- Dominic and his wife wanted to live \_\_\_\_\_.  
a in another country b in another place in their country
- Duke University offered \_\_\_\_\_ a job in the US.  
a Dominic b Miriam
- In the beginning, they \_\_\_\_\_ sure if they wanted to go.  
a were b weren't

#### b 11.2 Listen and match the sentences to photos A–F.

- We **rented** a house near the university.
- We **booked** our flights. It was a long trip!
- We **invited** our friends to a restaurant to say goodbye.
- We **packed** seven heavy suitcases.
- The children **didn't want** to sleep on the plane. Sacha played with toys and Elena **looked** at books.
- When we **arrived** in North Carolina, we were very tired!

We followed our dream



My wife and I always wanted to live abroad. But Miriam and I both work in the UK – she's a doctor and I'm a designer – and we have two small children, Sacha and Elena. Then an American university, Duke, in Durham, North Carolina, asked Miriam to go and work there for a year. At first, we weren't sure what to do. There were so many questions. What about Sacha's school? What do we do with our house? But finally, we decided to go!



c Look at the highlighted verbs in sentences 1–6 and complete the chart. What letters do you add to the verb to make the affirmative  $\oplus$  past form? How do you make the negative  $\ominus$ ?

simple past: regular verbs	
present	past
we book	We _____ our flights.
we arrive	We _____ in North Carolina.
they don't want	They _____ want to sleep.

e In pairs, ask and answer questions with *Did...?* about the story in a and b. Answer *Yes, he / she / it / they did.* OR *No, he / she / it / they didn't.*

- / Dominic and Miriam want to live abroad?
- / Duke University offer Dominic a job?
- / they invite their friends to their house?
- / the children want to sleep on the plane?
- / Sacha play with toys on the plane?
- / Elena play with Sacha?

*Did Dominic and Miriam want to live abroad?*

*(Yes, they did.)*

#### d p.112 Grammar Bank 11A

## 2 PRONUNCIATION regular simple past endings

- a **11.4** Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences.

 <b>dog</b>	We arriv <b>ed</b> in North Carolina. Sacha play <b>ed</b> with toys.
 <b>tie</b>	We book <b>ed</b> our flights. Elena look <b>ed</b> at books. We pack <b>ed</b> seven heavy suitcases.
<b>/ɪd/</b>	We rent <b>ed</b> a house near the university. We invit <b>ed</b> our friends to a restaurant.

- b **11.5** Listen and repeat the sentences in 1b.  
c Cover the sentences. Look at photo A and say the sentence. Do the same for photos B–F.

## 3 SPEAKING

- a Work with a partner.  
A Make  or  true sentences about you with the phrases below. Add more information.  
B Check (✓) the things your partner did and cross out (X) the things he or she didn't do.

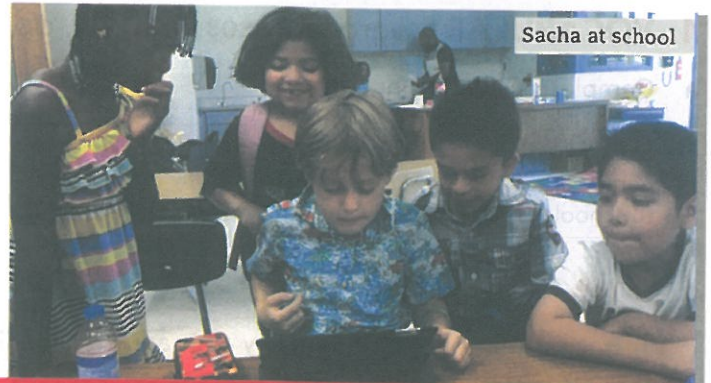
<b>this morning</b>	listen to the radio walk to work / school arrive late at work / school
<b>last night</b>	call a friend watch TV study English
<b>last weekend</b>	play a sport or a game cook lunch or dinner help in the house

( I listened to the radio this morning in the car.  
I didn't walk to work.

- b Change roles.  
c Work with a new partner. Ask and answer about his or her old partner.  
Did Anna listen to the radio this morning?  
( Yes, she did. She listened to it in the car.  
Did she walk to work? ) ( No, she didn't.

## 4 READING & LISTENING

- a **11.6** Read and listen to part of Dominic's blog about their life in the US. What did they like about the US? What was a problem for them?

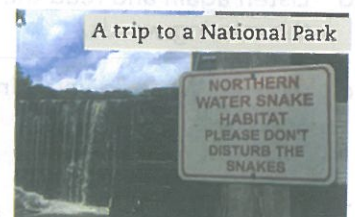
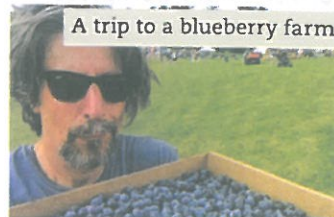


**We want to go back to \_\_\_\_\_ !**

**A**t first living in the US was very difficult. We missed our friends and family and we didn't like the food. It was difficult to find good chocolate. We also needed to rent a car. In London, we don't drive, but in Durham, not many people walk or use public transportation!

But we soon started to enjoy it. Our house was nice, and near a big park. Sacha liked his school, especially his music teacher, who played the trumpet! He worked hard and his teachers were very happy with him.

- b **11.7** Listen to the rest of the blog. Complete the title in a with *the UK* or *the US*.



- c Listen again and correct the information.
- Miriam wasn't very happy at work.
  - Dominic worked in an office.
  - Life in the US was very expensive.
  - The children learned to play tennis.
  - The people in Durham weren't very friendly.
  - The National Parks were similar to English parks.
  - At the blueberry farm they listened to classical music.
  - They stayed in Durham for two years.
  - They returned to England because they missed their life there.
- d Do you know anyone who lived or studied in another country? Where were they? Was it a good experience?

## WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 11A

- p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

 Go online to review the lesson

# 11B

## How was your day?

Did you have a good day?

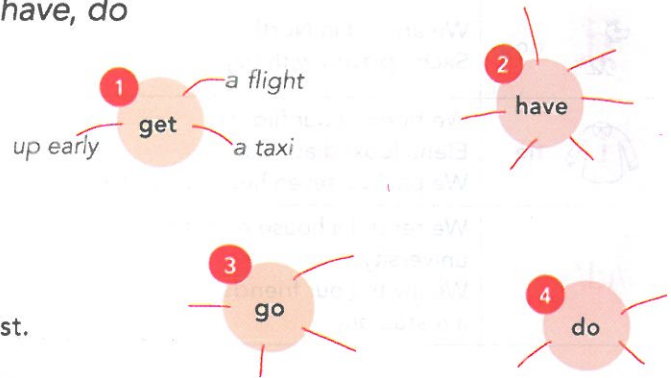
Yes, I had a great day.

**G** simple past irregular verbs: *get, go, have, do* **V** verb phrases with *get, go, have, do* **P** sentence rhythm

### 1 VOCABULARY verb phrases with *get, go, have, do*

a Complete the verb phrases.

to bed breakfast a coffee dinner a-flight home  
homework housework lunch a nice day out  
to school a soda a-taxi up-early yoga



b **11.9** Listen and check.

c Test a partner. **A** (book open) say a phrase from the list. **B** (book closed) say the phrase with the correct verb.

a flight) (get a flight

### 2 LISTENING

a **11.10** Ben was in Washington, D.C. for the day on business. He arrived home in New York City at 4:00 p.m. Listen to the conversation with his daughter, Linda. Check (✓) the places where she says she was during the day.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> at home            | <input type="checkbox"/> in a restaurant |
| <input type="checkbox"/> in a museum        | <input type="checkbox"/> in a café       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> in a shopping mall | <input type="checkbox"/> at school       |

b Listen again and read the conversation. Complete the missing words.

c **11.11** What do you think the noise is? Listen and check.

### 3 GRAMMAR simple past irregular verbs: *get, go, have, do*

a Read the conversation in **2b** again. Complete the chart.

simple present	simple past
I get	I _____ an early flight.
We go	We _____ to the American Museum of Natural History.
We have	We _____ lunch in the café.
I do	I _____ my homework.

b **11.12** Listen and check. Then repeat the simple past sentences.

c **p.112 Grammar Bank 11B**



**B** Hi. I'm back. Linda! What are you doing at <sup>1</sup>h \_\_\_\_\_?

**L** Hi, Dad. You're really early.

**B** Yes, I got an early <sup>2</sup>fl \_\_\_\_\_.

**L** How was your day?

**B** My day was fine. But what about your day? Why aren't you at school?

**L** We didn't have <sup>3</sup>cl \_\_\_\_\_ today. We went to the

<sup>4</sup>A \_\_\_\_\_ Museum of Natural History in the morning. It was great. And then we had <sup>5</sup>l \_\_\_\_\_ in the café there.

**B** Why didn't you go to school this afternoon?

**L** We had a <sup>6</sup>fr \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon. I stayed at home.

**B** What did you do?

**L** I did my <sup>7</sup>h \_\_\_\_\_. I had a lot of work.

**B** Good girl. When are your exams?

**L** They're next <sup>8</sup>w \_\_\_\_\_.

**B** Where's your <sup>9</sup>m \_\_\_\_\_?

**L** She went out. I think she went <sup>10</sup>sh \_\_\_\_\_.

**B** What's that?

**L** What?

**B** That noise.

## 4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence rhythm

- a **11.14** Listen and repeat the questions and answers. Copy the rhythm.

A What time did you get up?

B I got up at 7:30.

A Did you have breakfast?

B Yes, I did.

A What did you have?

B I had toast and coffee.

A What did you do then?

B I went to work.

- b **C Communication** Your day p.81 Interview a partner about yesterday.

## 5 READING

- a *Life in a Day* is a movie produced by Ridley Scott. Read the introduction to the article. What did a lot of people do on July 24th?

- b **11.15** Look at the photos with the article. Read and listen to the rest of the article. Complete captions 1–5.

- c Read the article again. Then answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 What normal things did people do on July 24th?
- 2 What unusual things did they do?

- d Cover the article. Can you remember the past tense of these verbs?

do get up go have open wash work

- e Complete the sentences with a verb from d.

- 1 The children \_\_\_\_\_ at 7:45 this morning and they were late for school.
- 2 I was very happy when I \_\_\_\_\_ my birthday present. It was exactly what I wanted!
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ my English homework on the bus yesterday.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ very hard today. I'm really tired!
- 5 Last summer we \_\_\_\_\_ to Turkey on vacation. We were very lucky – we \_\_\_\_\_ fantastic weather.
- 6 A Is this a new car?  
B No, it's two years old, but I \_\_\_\_\_ it this morning!

## 6 WRITING

**W**p.87 **Writing** A blog post Write about what you did yesterday.

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 11B

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

1 A boy \_\_\_\_\_ for the first time.

2 A small boy \_\_\_\_\_

3 A man \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_

4 A woman \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_

5 A man and a woman \_\_\_\_\_

WE ASKED PEOPLE AROUND THE WORLD TO FILM THEIR LIVES. WE GOT 4,500 HOURS OF VIDEO FROM 102 COUNTRIES. ALL OF IT WAS FILMED ON THE SAME DAY – JULY 24TH.

**E**arly in the morning in the US, a baby opened his eyes and looked at his mother. "Isn't he pretty?" she asked the camera. Around the world, people got up, and washed, and had breakfast. A 15-year-old boy shaved for the first time. He didn't enjoy it! A small boy kissed his mother on her birthday.

July 24th was a Saturday, so a lot of people didn't go to work. They relaxed and went to the park with their family, or went shopping. But other people worked hard, or cooked and cleaned. Some children played – but others worked. One small boy cleaned shoes on the street. One woman went to the hospital for an operation. Another woman waited all evening to talk to her husband on Skype. He was a soldier thousands of miles from home.

For some people, July 24th was a special day. A man arrived in Kathmandu. He was on a bicycle trip around the world. A woman did an incredible skydive. An unemployed man got his first job. A boy who was in college went home to see his father for the first time in three years. Another man asked his girlfriend to marry him. A man and a woman got married and had an incredible party.

This beautiful movie shows us life around the world in the 21st century. Watch it! It's free on YouTube.

asking for and giving directions

V prepositions of place

P sentence rhythm and polite intonation

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

prepositions of place; sentence rhythm and polite intonation

a 11.17 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



1 next to 2 across from 3 between



4 on the corner 5 on the left 6 on the right

b 11.18 Look at the map and the names of the streets and buildings. Listen and complete the places A-D.

coffee shop Chinese restaurant phone store park

c 11.19 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm and polite intonation.

A Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?  
 B Yes, there's one on the corner of King Street and East Road.  
 A Thank you

d Practice in pairs. Choose places on the map.

Excuse me. Is there a...near here?

(Yes, there's one on...)

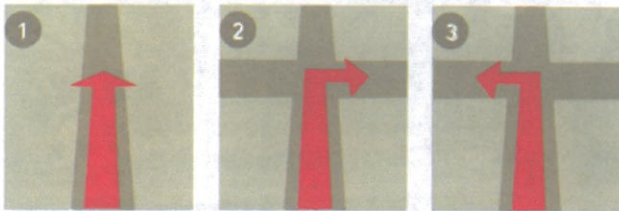


here ?

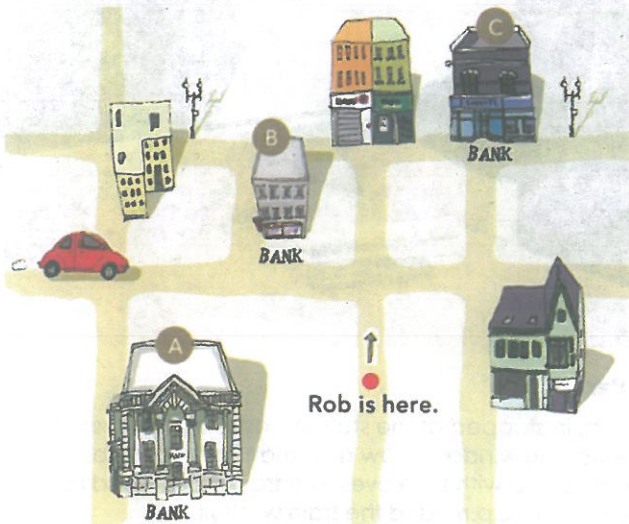
## 2 ASKING FOR AND GIVING DIRECTIONS

- a 11.20 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

A Turn right. B Turn left. C Go straight ahead.



- b 11.21 Rob needs to take out some money. He's looking for a cash machine. Watch or listen. Which bank does he go to, A, B, or C?



- Rob** Excuse me. Is there a cash machine near here?  
**Woman** Yes. There's one at Barclays Bank.  
**Rob** Sorry, where is that?  
**Woman** Turn left and go straight on. Then turn right and it's on the right.  
**Rob** Thanks very much.  
**Woman** You're welcome.

- c In pairs, practice the conversation in b.
- d 11.22 The ATM isn't working. Watch or listen to Rob asking for more directions. Which bank does he go to now?
- e **C Communication** Excuse me. Can you help me?  
 A p.81 B p.85 Practice asking for directions.

## 3 WHERE'S JENNY'S HOTEL?



- a 11.23 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny on the phone. Why is he calling her?
- b Watch or listen again. Complete the information about Jenny's hotel.

Hotel <sup>1</sup>Indigo, <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ Street. It's near Paddington <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Get the Heathrow Express train from the <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to Paddington. It only takes about <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ minutes.

DIRECTIONS: Turn <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ when you leave the station. Then go <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ for a bit and turn <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ into London Street. The hotel's <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ Norfolk Square.

## 4 USEFUL PHRASES

- 11.24 Listen and repeat the useful phrases.

Is there a cash machine near here?  
 Thanks very much.  
 You're welcome.  
 I don't believe it!  
 Excuse me, this cash machine isn't working.  
 It only takes about 15 minutes.  
 Turn left when you leave the station.

**American and British English**  
*across from* = American English  
*opposite* = British English

*ATM* = American English  
*cash machine* = British English

*straight ahead* = American English  
*straight on* = British English

*turn on London Street* = American English  
*turn into London Street* = British English

**Go online** to watch the video and review the lesson

# 12A

## Strangers on a train

Where did he see her?

He saw her on the train.

**G** simple past: regular and irregular verbs **V** regular and irregular verbs **P** irregular verbs

### 1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

regular and irregular verbs

a Take the Verbs quiz with a partner.

#### VERBS QUIZ

1 Look at the **regular verbs** and answer the questions.

arrive ask close exchange finish  
look move open start stop  
talk wait

- Which verb doubles the final consonant before the *-ed* ending?
- Which four verbs only add *-d*?
- In which two verbs is the *-ed* ending pronounced /ɪd/?

2 Match the simple past of the **irregular verbs** to the verbs.

wrote bought sent sat  
left said told saw

buy _____	send _____
leave _____	sit _____
say _____	tell _____
see _____	write _____

b **12.1** Listen and repeat the verbs in the quiz in the past tense.

c **12.2** Cover the quiz. Listen and say the verb in the past tense.

1 ) say (said

2 ) tell (told

### 2 READING & LISTENING

**12.3-12.4** Read and listen to the story. In pairs, ask and answer the questions after each part.

## Strangers on a train



#### 12.3 Part 1

When the train stopped at the station, I opened my eyes and looked out of the window. I saw a woman on the platform. She was tall and blond with blue eyes. The train moved and I closed my eyes. It was 4:00 p.m. and the train was full.

"Excuse me. Can I sit here?" I opened my eyes again. It was the tall, blond woman.

"Sure," I answered. She sat down next to me. There was a nice smell. Chanel No. 5. I started to listen to music on my phone.

"I love Chopin."

"Sorry?" I said.

"You're listening to Chopin. I love classical music." She smiled. Her eyes were very blue.

We talked about music until the train arrived at Paddington Station. "Would you like a cup of coffee?" she asked me. I looked at my watch. "OK," I said. "I have time."

- Where did the man first see the woman?
- What was the woman's perfume?
- What did they talk about?
- What did the woman invite him to do when the train arrived?



موسسه زبان دهخدا  
dehkhodaedu.com

dehkhodaedu.com

### 12.4 Part 2

We bought two coffees at the station café. We sat down.

"My name's Olivia," she said.

"I'm David. I'm from Chicago. Nice to meet you. What do you do?" I asked.

"I work in property – flats and houses. What do you do?"

"I work for Citibank."

"That's interesting!" said Olivia. "Do you live in London?"

"Yes, but I'm new here. I moved to London last month. I have a flat in Chelsea."

"Wow! That's an expensive part of London!"

I looked at my watch. "Time to go. I have a tennis lesson this evening."

"I can drive you home," she said. "I live near Chelsea." I told her my address.



- 5 What's Olivia's job?
- 6 What's David's job?
- 7 Where do they live?
- 8 Why did David give Olivia his address?

**Glossary**  
**property** land and buildings

### 3 GRAMMAR simple past: regular and irregular verbs

a Read the conversations and **circle** the correct form.

- 1 A Where did you **go** / **went** on Saturday?  
B I **go** / **went** clothes shopping.
- A What did you **buy** / **bought**?  
B I **buy** / **bought** a new jacket.
- A **Did** / **Was** it expensive?  
B No, it **didn't** / **wasn't**.
- 2 A What **did you do** / **did you** last night?  
B I **was** / **went** to the movies. I **see** / **saw** a new Japanese movie.
- A **Did** / **Was** you like / liked it?  
B No, I **didn't like** / **didn't liked** it very much. It **was** / **were** very slow.

b 12.5 Listen and check.

c p.114 Grammar Bank 12A

d With a partner, retell Parts 1 and 2 of the story. Use the questions to help you.

- How did David meet Olivia?
- What did they talk about?
- What happened at Paddington Station?
- How did David get home from the station?

### 4 VIDEO LISTENING

#### Strangers on a train



a 12.9 Watch or listen to *Strangers on a train* Part 3. Answer the questions.

- 1 What kind of car did Olivia have?
- 2 What did she have two tickets for?
- 3 Where did she want to meet him? What time?



b 12.10 Watch or listen to *Strangers on a train* Part 4. Answer the questions.

- 1 What time did David arrive at the concert hall?
- 2 What happened at 7:45? What did David do?
- 3 What did David do when the concert finished?
- 4 What did he do after that?
- 5 Why do you think Olivia didn't come to the concert?
- 6 What do you think David saw when he opened the door?

c 12.11 Watch or listen to Part 5, the end of the story. Do you think it was a good ending?

American and British English	
American English	British English
apartment	flat
parking lot	car park
call (v.)	phone (v.)

### WORDS AND PHRASES TO LEARN 12A

p.132 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.

Go online to review the lesson



# 12B Review the past

What did you do last Saturday?

I went to the movies.

**G** simple past review   **V** review of past verb forms   **P** review of vowel sounds

Play the game in groups of three or four.

<p><b>1</b></p> <p>Say five things you did yesterday morning.</p>	<p><b>2</b></p> <p>What did you do on your last summer vacation?</p>	<p><b>3</b></p> <p>Ask your group three questions with <i>Where were you yesterday at...?</i></p>	<p><b>4</b></p> <p><i>be, have, or do?</i> Which verb do we use with each expression?</p> <p>_____ a good day   _____ tired   _____ housework            _____ hungry   _____ homework   _____ lunch</p> <p>Make three <math>\oplus</math> or <math>\ominus</math> sentences about yesterday with three different phrases.</p>
<p><b>15</b></p> <p>Which verb has a different vowel sound?</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Make a sentence with each verb.</p>	<p><b>14</b></p> <p>Which verb is irregular? What's its past form?</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Make two <math>\oplus</math> or <math>\ominus</math> sentences about your last vacation with two different verbs.</p>	<p><b>13</b></p> <p>What was the last movie you saw? When and where did you see it? Did you like it?</p>	<p><b>12</b></p> <p>Did you go shopping last week? Where? What did you buy?</p>
<p><b>16</b></p> <p>What time did you get up this morning? Were you tired?</p>	<p><b>17</b></p> <p>When is your birthday? What did you do on your last birthday?</p>	<p><b>18</b></p> <p>When was the last time you talked to a stranger? What did you talk about?</p>	<p><b>19</b></p> <p>Complete the verb in each phrase. What's the past tense of each verb?</p> <p>b_____ new clothes            s_____ "sorry" to somebody            s_____ a movie</p> <p>When was the last time you did each thing?</p>
<p><b>30</b></p> <p>Which verb has a different vowel sound?</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>_____</p> <p>Make two sentences about last Friday with two different verbs.</p>	<p><b>29</b></p> <p>Complete the verb in each phrase. What's the past tense of each verb?</p> <p>s_____ a message            u_____ a laptop            wr_____ an email</p> <p>When was the last time you did each thing?</p>	<p><b>28</b></p> <p>Choose a day last week. Ask your group three questions with <i>On _____ day, did you...?</i></p>	<p><b>27</b></p> <p>Did you play any sports or exercise last week? What did you do?</p>

## RULES

Throw a dice. When you land on a square, answer the question.  
Green and pink squares are "group" questions. Answer them together.  
You can't make the same sentence that another player has made before.  
The first person who answers question 30 is the winner.



5

In which verb(s) is the **-ed** ending pronounced /ɪd/?

hated liked loved wanted

Make two sentences about when you were a child with two different verbs.

6

What did you have for breakfast this morning?  
Where did you have it?

7

What's the last big city you visited?

8

When was the last time you bought a souvenir?  
What was it?

11

What did you do last Saturday?

10

In which verb(s) is the **-ed** ending pronounced /t/?

cooked needed packed watched

Make two sentences about last night with two different verbs.

9

Complete the verb in each phrase.  
Make a  or  sentence about yesterday with each verb.

d \_\_\_\_\_ housework

g \_\_\_\_\_ up in the morning

h \_\_\_\_\_ a nice evening

w \_\_\_\_\_ for a bus

20

Match a verb from 1 to one with the same vowel sound in 2.

1 changed started relaxed

2 traveled parked played

Choose one pair of verbs. Make two sentences.

21

Did you get a bus or a train last week?  
Where to?

22

How many hours of TV did you watch yesterday? What shows?

23

How did you come to class today? Were you late?

26

Where did you have lunch last Sunday?  
Who with?

25

Which verb has a different vowel sound?

did liked listened lived

Make a sentence with each verb.

24

Which verb can't you use with the **bold** noun?

cook / drink / have **dinner**  
eat / have / want **a coffee**  
buy / travel / want **new shoes**

Make  or  sentences about last week with three of the phrases.

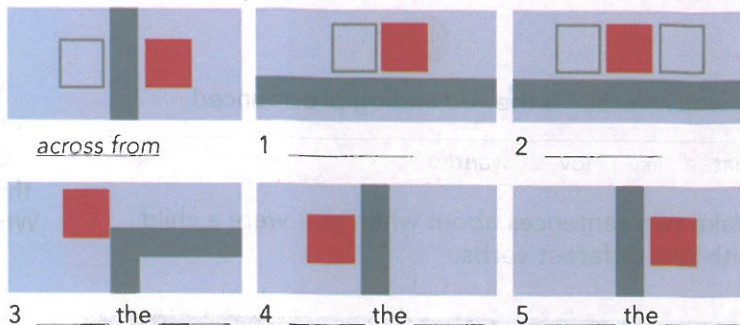
### GRAMMAR

Circle a or b.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 's your name?  
 a Who b **What**
- 1 They \_\_\_\_\_ English at school.  
 a studied b studied
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the movie?  
 a Did you like b Liked you
- 3 He \_\_\_\_\_ late yesterday.  
 a doesn't work b didn't work
- 4 What time \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a did they arrive b did they arrived
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ to Canada last year.  
 a was b went
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ the homework last night.  
 a didn't do b didn't
- 7 What time did you \_\_\_\_\_ this morning?  
 a get up b got up
- 8 We \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at a great restaurant on Sunday.  
 a haved b had
- 9 Where \_\_\_\_\_ on vacation?  
 a did you go b you did go
- 10 A \_\_\_\_\_ the movie good?  
 B Yes, fantastic.  
 a Did b Was
- 11 I liked the jacket, but I \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
 a didn't buy b didn't bought
- 12 A What time \_\_\_\_\_ to bed last night?  
 B At 10:15.  
 a did you went b did you go
- 13 Alicia \_\_\_\_\_ to Mexico City last month.  
 a goes b went
- 14 Cho \_\_\_\_\_ to class yesterday.  
 a didn't come b didn't came
- 15 What time \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a finished the concert  
 b did the concert finish

### VOCABULARY

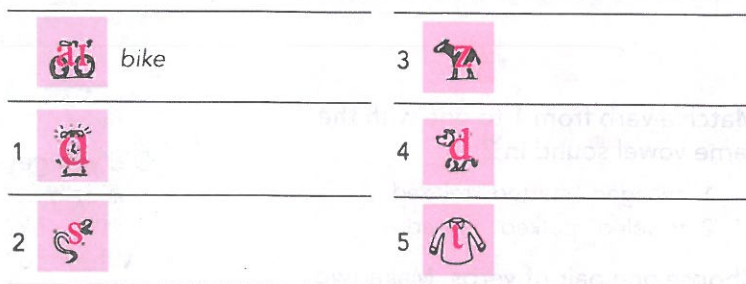
a Write the words or phrases.



b Write the past tense of the verbs (regular or irregular).

ask <u>asked</u>	help _____	sit _____
buy _____	leave _____	start _____
carry _____	miss _____	stay _____
change _____	need _____	study _____
cry _____	open _____	talk _____
do _____	say _____	tell _____
have _____	send _____	write _____

a Write the words for the sound pictures.



b **P p.134-5 Sound Bank** Look at more words with the sounds in a, and these sounds:



Practice saying the example words.

c Underline the stressed syllable.

<u>wea</u> ther	2 be tween	4 des ti na tion
1 ex per i ence	3 de cide	5 ex change

**CAN YOU** understand this text?

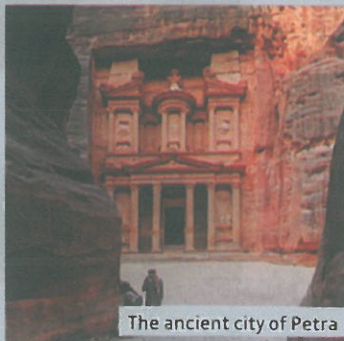
**A Unique Culture**

I studied for three months at Al-Ahliyya Amman University, in Amman, the capital of Jordan. It was a life-changing experience. Every day was a new adventure – very different from my life in the US. While I was there, I studied US politics in the Middle East, the history of the Arab world, and Arabic language.



People often ask me what my favorite memory is, but it's difficult to answer because there are so many! I loved riding a camel in the Wadi Rum desert and I went on an amazing excursion to Petra. The countryside was beautiful and completely different from where I live in the US. I also enjoyed the unique culture of Jordan. Of course, there were things that I sometimes found difficult, but everybody from Jordan was very understanding and friendly.

My recommendation for people who want to study abroad is to go to a country that is completely different from where you live and to stay as long as you can. I loved learning about another culture and I think studying abroad is a great experience.



The ancient city of Petra

**CAN YOU** understand these people?

12.13 Watch or listen and answer the questions.



- 1 Last weekend it \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a was nice weather
  - b was Sophie's friend's birthday
  - c rained
- 2 For her last vacation Gina went to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a Connecticut
  - b California
  - c Kansas
- 3 Rozie had a good meal recently at a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a French restaurant
  - b Mexican restaurant
  - c Chinese restaurant
- 4 Chimi isn't very good at \_\_\_\_ directions.
  - a understanding
  - b giving
  - c understanding or giving
- 5 Susan says there's a café \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a on the right
  - b on the left
  - c on the corner

**CAN YOU** say this in English?

Check (✓) the boxes.

Can you...?

Yes, I can.

- 1 say what you did yesterday, last weekend, etc.
- 2 ask for and give directions in a town
- 3 ask questions about the past

**a** Read the article about Delaney Morgan, an American student who studied in Jordan. Which three places in Jordan does she mention?

**b** Read again and mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).

- 1 Delaney spent three weeks in Jordan.
- 2 Her life there was different from her life at home.
- 3 She didn't learn any Arabic.
- 4 She has a lot of good memories of Jordan.
- 5 She stayed in Amman all the time.
- 6 She didn't like the countryside.
- 7 The Jordanians weren't always very friendly.
- 8 She thinks it's good to experience life in another country.

# Communication

## 1B WHERE IS IT? Student A

a Ask **B** questions for your cities.

(Where's Izmir?)

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1 <b>Izmir</b> is in Turkey.              | 5 <b>Cusco</b> is in Peru.      |
| 2 <b>Atlanta</b> is in the United States. | 6 <b>Montreal</b> is in Canada. |
| 3 <b>Hanoi</b> is in Vietnam.             | 7 <b>Hong Kong</b> is in China. |
| 4 <b>Curitiba</b> is in Brazil.           | 8 <b>Salta</b> is in Argentina. |

b Answer **B**'s questions with a country.

(It's in... (I think it's in... (I don't know.

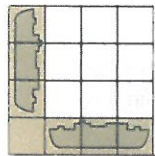
← p.8

## PE1 HIT THE SHIPS Student A

a Draw five "ships" in **Your ships**.

Your ships

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										



One ship = three squares

B's ships

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										

b Try to "hit" **B**'s ships. Say a square, e.g., H8. If **B** says *Hit*, check (✓) the square in **B**'s ships. If **B** says *Nothing*, cross out (X) the square.

H8? (Nothing. B7?) (Hit!

c **B** says a square. Say *Hit* or *Nothing*.

← p.10

## 2A IS SUSHI CHINESE? Student A



\_\_\_\_\_ sushi Chinese?



Gisele Bündchen is Brazilian.



\_\_\_\_\_ the Rolling Stones American?



Hyundai cars are Korean.



\_\_\_\_\_ Mount Fuji Japanese?



Tacos are Mexican.



\_\_\_\_\_ Victoria Beckham Canadian?



Antonio Banderas is Spanish.



\_\_\_\_\_ Machu Picchu Peruvian?



Coke and Pepsi are American.

a Ask **B** about 1–5. Use *Is...?* or *Are...?* Check (✓) if the answer is yes. If the answer is no, write the nationality.

(Is sushi Chinese?)

b Answer **B**'s question about 6–10.

No, he / she / it isn't. He / She / It's...)

Yes, they are.)

No, they aren't. They're...)

← p.13

## 2B PERSONAL INFORMATION Student A

a Interview **B** and complete **B's** form.

What's your first name? (Chris.  
How do you spell it? (C-H-R-I-S.

Student B	
First name	
Last name	
Nationality	
Address	
Zip code	
Age	
Married <input type="checkbox"/>	Single <input type="checkbox"/>
Phone number	home
	cell
Email address	

b Answer **B's** questions. Use the information in the **YOU** form.

YOU	
First name	Alex
Last name	Barrett
Nationality	American
Address	15 Hill Drive, Los Angeles, CA
Zip code	90041
Age	25
Married <input type="checkbox"/>	Single <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Phone number	home 323-555-0679
	cell 323-555-4198
Email address	abarrett65@mymail.com

← p.15

## 3B HOW MUCH ARE THESE WATCHES? Student A

a Look at your picture. You are a customer. Ask **B** about the missing prices. Use *this* / *that* for singular objects **OR** *these* / *those* for plural objects. Write the prices.

How much is this mug? (It's...



b Now **B** is a customer. Answer **B's** questions with a price.

(It's / They're...dollars.

← p.21

## PE3 WHAT TIME IS IT? Student A

a Ask **B** a question to complete the time on clock 1.

(Clock 1: What time is it?



b Answer **B's** question about clock 2.

(It's...

c Continue with the other clocks.

← p.34

## 8A I'M A TOURIST. WHERE CAN I...?

Student A

- a You are a tourist. **B** lives in this town. Ask **B** your questions.

### In this town

where can I...?

- have a good, cheap meal
- see movies in English
- go with small children
- go in the evening

Can I...?

- take photos in museums
- drive around downtown



- b You live in this town. Answer **B**'s questions about your town, or a town you know well. → p.49

## 9A THE SAME OR DIFFERENT? Student A

- a Say what the woman in picture 1 is doing. **B** says if his / her picture is the same or different. Write **S** or **D**.



- b Now listen to **B** describe the person in picture 2. Is your person the same or different? Write **S** or **D**.
- c Continue with people 3–8.
- d Compare your pictures and check your answers.

← p.55

## 10A IS THERE A TV? WHERE IS IT?

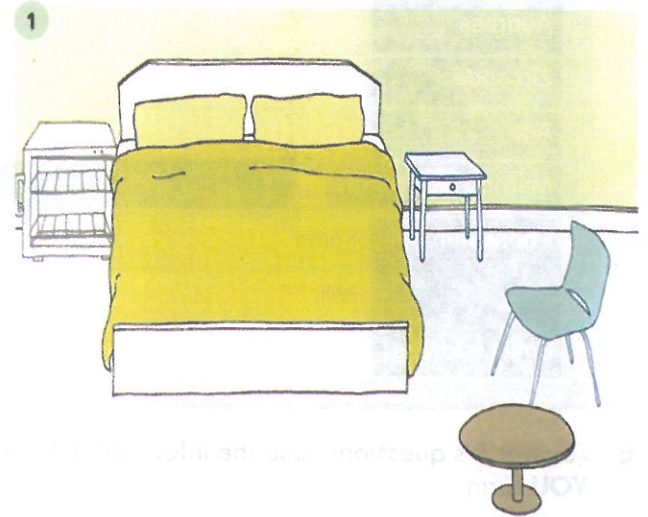
Student A

- a Look at picture 1. Ask **B** questions about the things in the list for the picture.

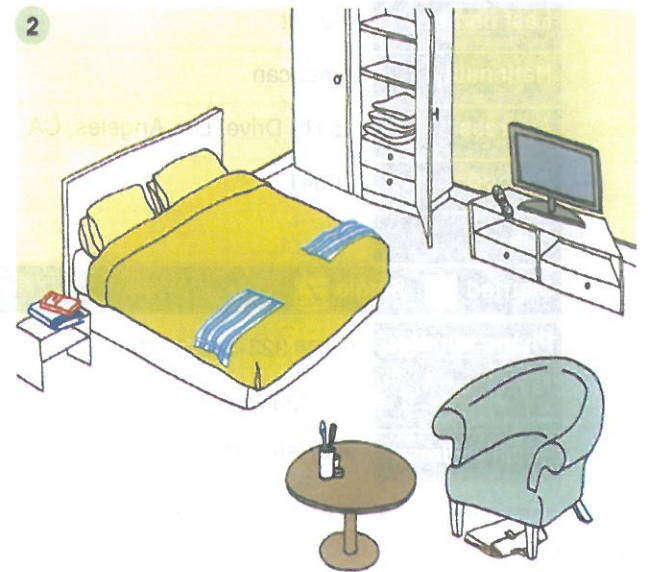
books coat sodas keys lamp laptop  
newspaper suitcase towels TV

Are there any books? ) Is there a coat? )

If **B** answers Yes, ask *Where are they?* OR *Where is it?* Draw the thing(s) in the correct places in picture 1.



- b Look at picture 2 and answer **B**'s questions.



→ p.61

## 11B YOUR DAY Students A+B

- a What did you do yesterday? Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Write your partner's answers.

*What time did you get up yesterday?*

*(I got up at 6:30 in the morning.)*

YOUR DAY	Your partner
1 What time / get up yesterday?	
2 / take a shower?	
3 / have breakfast? What / have?	
4 / go to work or school? How / get there?	
5 What time / start work or school?	
6 Where / have lunch? / enjoy it?	
7 What time / go home?	
8 / do homework or housework?	
9 What / have for dinner?	
10 / watch TV? What / watch?	
11 What time / go to bed?	
12 / have a good day?	

- b Change partners. Tell your new partner three things about your first partner.

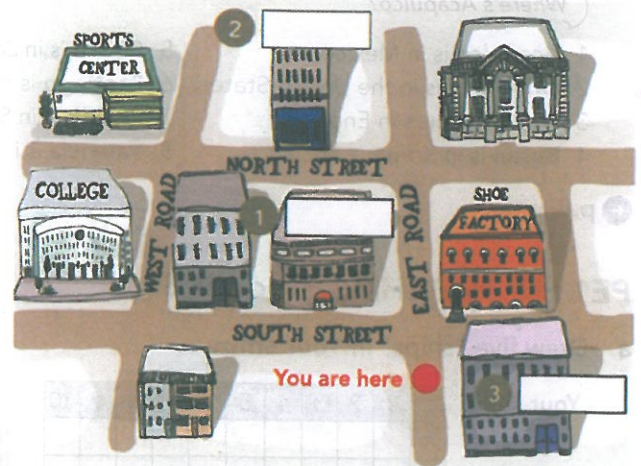
↻ p.69

## PE6 EXCUSE ME. CAN YOU HELP ME? 81

### Student A

- a Ask B for directions to the bus station. Then mark it on the map (building 1, 2, or 3). You begin:

*(Excuse me. Can you help me? Where's the bus station, please?)*



- b Help B when he / she asks you for directions to the college.

*Excuse me. ...* *(Go...)*

- c Now ask B for directions to the Park Hotel and the phone store. Then mark them on the map.

- d Give B directions to the sports center and the shoe factory.

↻ p.71

## 3A MEMORY GAME Students A+B

- a Look at the photo for 30 seconds.  
b Close your book. In pairs, can you remember all the things?

*A watch.* *(No, two watches, I think.)* ↻ p.18





## 1B WHERE IS IT? Student B

a Answer **A**'s questions with a country.

(It's in... (I think it's in... (I don't know.

b Ask **A** questions for your cities.

(Where's Acapulco?

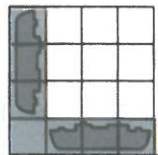
- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 <b>Acapulco</b> is in Mexico.             | 5 <b>Osaka</b> is in Japan.         |
| 2 <b>Las Vegas</b> is in the United States. | 6 <b>Santiago</b> is in Chile.      |
| 3 <b>Manchester</b> is in England.          | 7 <b>Riyadh</b> is in Saudi Arabia. |
| 4 <b>Busan</b> is in Korea.                 | 8 <b>Valencia</b> is in Spain.      |

➔ p.8

## PE1 HIT THE SHIPS Student B

a Draw five "ships" in **Your ships**.

Your ships	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										



One ship = three squares

A's ships	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A										
B										
C										
D										
E										
F										
G										
H										
I										
J										

b **A** says a square, e.g., **H8**. If you have a ship in **H8**, say **Hit**. If not, say **Nothing**.

H8? (Nothing. B7?) (Hit!

c Try to "hit" **A**'s ships. Say a square, e.g., **B3**. If **A** says **Hit**, check (✓) the square in **A**'s ships. If **A** says **Nothing**, cross out (X) the square.

➔ p.10

## 2A IS SUSHI CHINESE? Student B



Sushi is Japanese.



\_\_\_\_\_ Gisele Bündchen English?



The Rolling Stones are British.



\_\_\_\_\_ Hyundai cars Vietnamese?



Mount Fuji is Japanese.



\_\_\_\_\_ tacos Mexican?



Victoria Beckham is British.



\_\_\_\_\_ Antonio Banderas Chilean?



Machu Picchu is Peruvian.



\_\_\_\_\_ Coke and Pepsi British?

a Answer **A**'s question about 1–5.

Yes, he / she / it is.)

No, he / she / it isn't. He / She / It's...)

Yes, they are.)

No, they aren't. They're...)

b Ask **A** about 6–10. Use **Is...?** or **Are...?** Check (✓) if the answer is yes. If the answer is no, write the nationality.

(Is Gisele Bündchen English?

➔ p.13

## 2B PERSONAL INFORMATION Student B

- a Answer **A**'s questions. Use the information in the **YOU** form.

YOU	
First name	Chris
Last name	Lennox
Nationality	American
Address	81 West Street, Bridgeport, CT
Zip code	06605
Age	31
Married <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Single <input type="checkbox"/>
Phone number	home 203-555-8124 cell 203-555-0997
Email address	chris71@mac.com

What's your first name?)

How do you spell it?)

Student A	
First name	
Last name	
Nationality	
Address	
Zip code	
Age	
Married <input type="checkbox"/>	Single <input type="checkbox"/>
Phone number	home cell
Email address	

← p.15

## 3B HOW MUCH ARE THESE WATCHES?

Student B

- a Look at your picture. **A** is a customer. Answer **A**'s questions with a price.

(It's / They're...dollars.)



- b Now you are a customer. Ask **A** about the missing prices. Use *this / these* OR *that / those*. Write the prices.

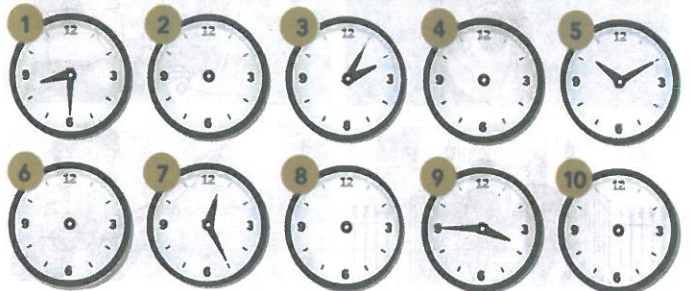
How much is this flag?) (It's...

← p.21

## PE3 WHAT TIME IS IT? Student B

- a Answer **A**'s question about clock 1.

(It's...



- b Ask **A** a question to complete the time on clock 2.

(Clock 2: What time is it?)

- c Continue with the other clocks.

→ p.34

## 8A I'M A TOURIST. WHERE CAN I...?

Student B

- a You live in this town. Answer **A**'s questions about your town, or a town you know well.
- b You are a tourist. **A** lives in this town. Ask **A** your questions.

### In this town

where can I...?

- go for a nice walk
- go shopping for souvenirs
- park in a parking lot
- eat really good food

Can I...?

- go shopping on Sundays
- pay by credit card in cafés and small stores



← p.49

## 9A THE SAME OR DIFFERENT? Student B

- a Listen to **A** describe what the woman in picture 1 is doing. Is your person the same or different? Write **S** or **D**.



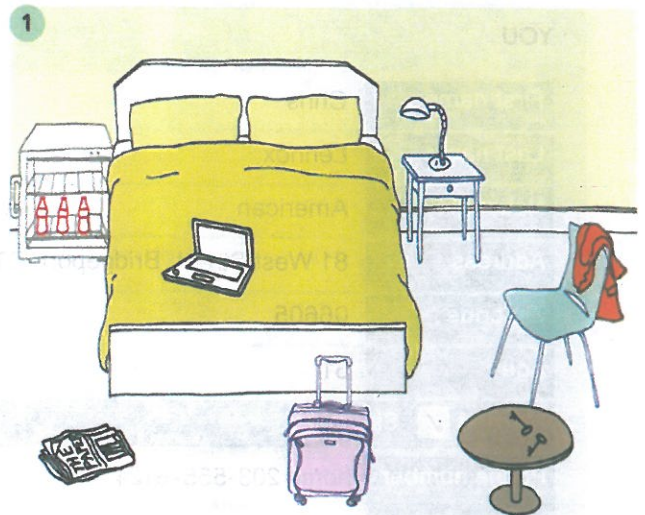
- b Describe the person in picture 2 to **A**. Say what he / she is doing. **A** says if his / her picture is the same or different. Write **S** or **D**.
- c Continue with people 3–8.
- d Compare your pictures and check your answers.

← p.55

## 10A IS THERE A TV? WHERE IS IT?

Student B

- a Look at picture 1 and answer **A**'s questions.

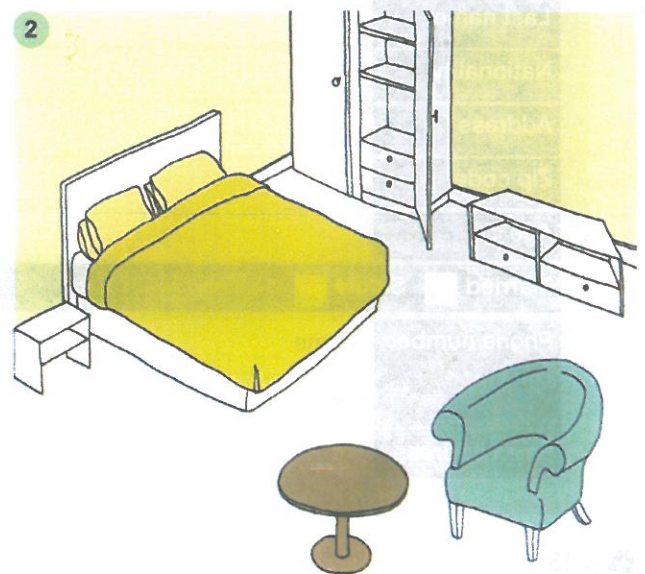


- b Look at picture 2. Ask **A** questions about the things below for the picture.

*Is there a bag? Are there any books?*

bag books clock sodas extra pillows laptop pens remote control towels TV

If **A** answers *Yes*, ask *Where is it?* **OR** *Where are they?* Draw the thing(s) in the correct places in picture 2.



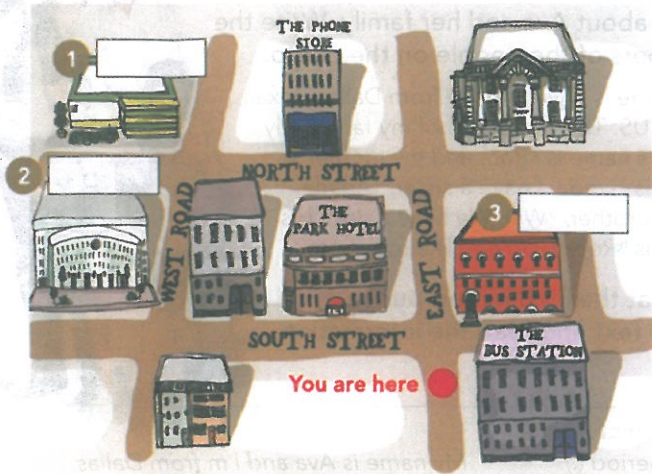
← p.61

**PE6 EXCUSE ME. CAN YOU HELP ME?**

Student B

- a Help **A** when he / she asks you for directions to the bus station.

Excuse me. ... (Go...



- b Ask **A** for directions to the college. Then mark it on the map (building 1, 2, or 3). You begin:

(Excuse me. Can you help me? Where's the college, please?

- c Help **A** when he / she asks you for directions to the Park Hotel and the phone store.
- d Ask **A** for directions to the sports center and the shoe factory. Then mark them on the map.

⊖ p.71

**9B UNDERCOVER BOSS** Students A+B



**FRIDAY** At the end of the week, David says to the workers, "I'm not 'Andy'. I'm David Clarke, your boss." The workers are very surprised. He tells them about his experience and asks them to make some changes. He also helps individual workers and gives the very good ones more money. David thinks going undercover is the only way to really discover what is happening in a company.

⊖ p.56

Blank form with fields for:

- First Name
- Last Name
- Title (Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms)
- Age
- Married  Single
- Divorced  Separated
- Address
- Zip Code
- Email
- Phone Number (Home)
- Cell phone

## 1 A FORM

- a Look at the form. Match each part to a question a–h below.
- a  Are you married?
  - b  What's your home phone number?
  - c  What's your zip code?
  - d  How old are you?
  - e  What's your email?
  - f  What's your name?
  - g  What's your cell phone number?
  - h  What's your address?

### CREDIT CARD Application form

1 First name \_\_\_\_\_  
 Last name \_\_\_\_\_

Title: Mr.  Ms.  Mrs.

2 Age \_\_\_\_\_

3 Married  Single   
 Divorced / Separated

4 Address \_\_\_\_\_

5 Zip code \_\_\_\_\_

6 Email \_\_\_\_\_

Phone number 7 home \_\_\_\_\_  
 8 cell phone \_\_\_\_\_

- b Complete the form for you. Check (✓) your title, too.

Titles  
 Mr. = a man, Ms. = a woman,  
 Mrs. = a married woman

Capital letters  
 Adam Davis **NOT** adam-davis  
 245 Green Street **NOT** 245-green-street  
 London **NOT** london  
 Miami, Florida **NOT** miami, florida

← p.15

## 2 A POST ABOUT A PHOTO

- a Read about Ava and her family. Write the numbers of the people on the photo.

My name is <sup>1</sup>Ava and I'm from Dallas, Texas, in the US. This is a photo of my family. My father's name is <sup>2</sup>Ron, and my mother's name is <sup>3</sup>Linda. I have a sister, <sup>4</sup>Ariana, and a brother, <sup>5</sup>Will. We have a dog. His name is <sup>6</sup>Rocky. Do you like my photo?



- b Look at the highlighted punctuation in the text and read the information box.

<input type="checkbox"/> Punctuation period (.)	My name is Ava and I'm from Dallas. <b>NOT</b> My name is Ava and I'm from Dallas
comma (,)	I have a sister, Ariana, and a brother, Will.
question mark (?)	Do you like my photo?
apostrophe (')	I'm from Dallas. <b>NOT</b> Im from Dallas. My father's name... <b>NOT</b> My fathers name...

- c Post a photo of your family and write about it. → p.25

## 3 A COMMENT POST

- a Read Marcos's comment. Do you like his breakfast?

### LET'S CHAT! TODAY'S QUESTION:

Is breakfast important for you? What do you have? Where do you have it?

**Mark, Los Angeles, US** 7 mins ago

Breakfast is very important for me! I have fruit, usually an orange **or** an apple.

Then I have milk, cereal, **and** a glass of orange juice.

I usually have breakfast at home, **but** on weekends I have it at a café near my house. I think my breakfast is very healthy.



- b Look at the highlighted words. Complete sentences 1–3 with **and**, **or**, or **but**.

- 1 I eat fish, \_\_\_\_\_ I don't eat meat.
- 2 Do you have tea \_\_\_\_\_ coffee for breakfast?
- 3 I have a brother \_\_\_\_\_ a sister.

- c Write a comment about your breakfast. What do you have? Is it healthy? Use **and**, **but**, and **or** to connect. → p.31

## 4 AN EMAIL

- a Read the email from Lucy. What does she invite Kate to?

**From:** Lucy Lewis <LL1991@netlink.com>  
**To:** Kate <ksavage@topmail.net>  
**Subject:** Dinner

Hi Kate,  
 Would you like to come to dinner on Thursday? I'm inviting Nora and Kenji, too.  
 Can you come at 7:00? After dinner we can watch the game on TV!  
 See you on Thursday (I hope!).  
 Lucy

- b Now read Kate's answer. Circle the correct phrase.

**From:** Kate <ksavage@topmail.net>  
**To:** Lucy Lewis <LL1991@netlink.com>  
**Subject:** Re: Dinner

Dear Lucy,  
*I'd love to come / I'm sorry, but I can't come* on Thursday. I have an exam on Friday morning and I need to study on Thursday night.  
*See you on Thursday. / Maybe see you on the weekend?*  
 Love,  
 Kate

- c Read the information box about emails.

🔍 Emails  
**Greetings** *Hi + name, Dear + name,*  
**Closings** *Best wishes, Love, (only family and good friends) See you (on Thursday, soon, etc.),*

- d Work in pairs. Write an email to your partner on a piece of paper. Invite him / her to do something, e.g., have dinner, come to a party, see a movie, etc. Remember to say when and what time.  
 e Now exchange emails with your partner. Answer your partner's invitation.  
 f Give the email to your partner. Read your partner's answer to your email.

➔ p.59

## 5 A BLOG POST

- a Read Eddie's blog. Number the sentences in the correct order 1-7.

### A BIG DAY

by Eddie 17 hours ago

Yesterday was a big day for me. It was the first day of my new job.

- After that, I went to my new office. I got a taxi because I didn't want to be late.
- I went to bed early, at 9:30. I was really tired, but it was a good day!
- 1 I got up at 6:30. I usually get up at 8:00 or 8:30, but yesterday I was very excited!
- I didn't go out for lunch – I had a sandwich in the office. My colleagues usually do that, so I did, too.
- I went home at 5:30. I had a pizza for dinner with my girlfriend. After dinner, we watched TV.
- Then I had breakfast. I didn't eat very much because I was a little nervous.
- When I arrived, the boss introduced me to the other people in the office. Everybody was very friendly.

- b Read the information box.

🔍 Showing the order of events  
**Then**  
 Then I had breakfast  
**After that**  
 After that, I went to my new office.  
**After (+ lunch, dinner, etc.)**  
 After dinner, we watched TV.

- c What did you do yesterday? Write a blog about your day. Use *then, after that, and after breakfast / lunch, etc.*, to put the events in order.

➔ p.69

# Listening

1.42

Hello. I'm Rob. I'm from London. I'm a journalist. Today I'm in Poland. I'm not on holiday. I'm here for work.

1.45

Hi. I'm Jenny Zielinski. I'm from New York. Tomorrow's my birthday, and my favorite restaurant in New York is Locanda Verde. It's Italian.

1.46

**Waiter** Locanda Verde. Good morning. How can I help you?

**Jenny** Hello. A table for tomorrow, please.

**Waiter** Tomorrow...uh, Tuesday?

**Jenny** Yes, that's right.

**Waiter** How many people?

**Jenny** Three.

**Waiter** What time?

**Jenny** Seven o'clock.

**Waiter** What's your name, please?

**Jenny** Jenny Zielinski. That's Z-I-E-L-I-N-S-K-I.

**Waiter** Thank you, Ms., uh, Zielinski. OK. So, a table for three on Tuesday at seven.

**Jenny** Great. Thanks. Bye.

**Waiter** Goodbye. See you tomorrow.

2.26

1 **A** Great. OK, see you on Tuesday.

**B** Yes. Oh, what's your cell phone number?

**A** It's, uh, 303-555-0415.

2 **A** Thank you. What's your address, please?

**B** It's 57 Oak Street.

3 **A** Come in...sit down. You're Martin Lee, right?

**B** Yes.

**A** And how old are you, Mr. Lee?

**B** I'm 39...

4 **A** Thank you very much. Uh, one more thing. What's your email?

**B** It's james85@geemail.com

3.2

What are the top things people look for every day? At number 8, it's...wallets and change purses.

At number 7, umbrellas.

At number 6, bank cards – credit cards or debit cards.

At number 5, phone chargers.

And now for the top four.

At number 4, glasses and sunglasses.

At number 3, pens and pencils.

And at number 2, cell phones.

And at number 1, – yes, that's right – keys. House keys and car keys.

So, try to find a safe place...

3.8

1 Please take out your laptops... All laptops out, please.

2 Please turn off all cell phones and electronic devices.

3 **A** Excuse me. Is this your bag?

**B** Oh yes! Thank you very much!

4 **A** Hi. My name's Sam Smith. I have a reservation.

**B** Can I see your passport, please?

**A** Sure, here you are.

5 **A** OK, Ms. Jones. You're in room 315. Here's your key.

**B** Thank you very much. Uh, where's the elevator?

3.13

**Man** Excuse me, Miss. Is this your cell phone?

**Woman** Oh! Yes, it is. Thank you very much.

**Man** You're welcome. It's a very nice phone! The new iPhone.

**Woman** Sorry? Oh yes.

**Man** A souvenir for your family? A T-shirt is only \$25!

**Woman** OK. A Yankees T-shirt, please.

**Man** And a mug?

**Woman** Yes, and a mug!

3.20

1 **Man** *The New York Times*, please.

**Woman** Here you are.

**Man** How much is it?

**Woman** It's two dollars and fifty cents.

2 **Man** An umbrella, please.

**Woman** For how much?

**Man** Fifteen euros, please.

**Woman** Here you are.

**Man** Thanks.

3 **Man 1** A memory card, please.

**Man 2** Two gigs or four?

**Man 1** Two, please. How much is it?

**Man 2** Nine dollars and forty-nine cents.

**Man 1** Is a credit card OK?

**Man 2** Sure.

4 **Woman** A one-way ticket to Oxford, please.

**Man** Thirty pounds twenty p, please.

**Woman** Here you are.

**Man** Thank you.

3.25

**Assistant** Hi. How can I help you?

**Jenny** Hi. How much is this tuna salad?

**Assistant** It's seven twenty.

**Jenny** OK, fine. And this mineral water, please.

**Assistant** That's nine dollars seventy cents.

**Jenny** Here you are.

**Assistant** Thank you. Have a nice day.

**Amy** Jenny!

**Jenny** Amy! Hi, how are you?

**Amy** I'm fine. How are you?

**Jenny** I'm fine, too.

**Amy** What's that?

**Jenny** Oh, just a salad and some water.

**Amy** You are good! Look, wait for me. We can have lunch together in the park.

**Jenny** Sure! Great idea.

**Amy** Can I have a cheese sandwich, a cappuccino, and a brownie, please?

4.11

**Marina** What a nice card!  
**Carly** Yeah, it's from my family.  
**M** Can I see?  
**C** Sure.  
**M** Who's Paul? Is he your brother?  
**C** Yes, he's my brother and Hayley's his girlfriend.  
**M** How old is Paul?  
**C** He's twenty-nine. No, he's thirty.  
**M** What about Shira? Is she your sister?  
**C** No, Shira's my brother Jerry's wife. And Mia's their daughter.  
**M** Oh yeah, I remember. The baby in the photo on your phone.  
**C** Yes. She's so beautiful.  
**M** So who's Nicole?  
**C** She's my sister.  
**M** Is John her husband?  
**C** No, he's her boyfriend – they aren't married. Maybe one day.  
**M** And how old's Nicole?  
**C** She's twenty-six.  
**M** And who's Buddy?  
**C** He's my dog!  
**M** Oh! What kind of dog is he?

4.13

1 It's a Chevrolet. It's American.  
 2 It's a Jaguar. It's British.  
 3 It's a Hyundai. It's Korean.  
 4 It's a Geely. It's Chinese.  
 5 It's a SEAT. It's Spanish.  
 6 It's a Honda. It's Japanese.

5.6

**Anna** My favorite meal of the day is dinner. I usually have dinner at home, but sometimes I have dinner at a restaurant. I usually have meat or fish and vegetables, and if I'm at a restaurant, I have a cup of coffee.

5.7

**Will** My favorite meal of the day is lunch. I'm always hungry then. I have lunch at work. We have a cafeteria there. I have different things for lunch but always with French fries. I love French fries. Sometimes a burger and French fries, sometimes fish and French fries. I drink water with my lunch, but after lunch I have a coffee, an espresso.

**Sarah** My favorite meal of the day is breakfast. I usually have it at home, but on Wednesdays I have my yoga class and I have breakfast at a café near the yoga studio. At home I have fruit and an egg, and coffee or tea. But at the café I have a muffin and hot chocolate.

5.15

**Taxi driver** Where to ma'am?  
**Eve** Hello. To the airport, please.  
**Taxi driver** JFK or Newark?  
**Eve** JFK, please.  
**Eve** Oh dear. The traffic is bad this morning.  
**Taxi driver** Yes. It's terrible. Where are you from?  
**Eve** I'm from Manchester but I live in London. Are you from New York?  
**Taxi driver** No, ma'am, I'm from Puerto Rico.  
**Eve** Oh, do you like New York?  
**Taxi driver** It's a great city, but it's very expensive.  
**Eve** London is very expensive, too. Do you have children?  
**Taxi driver** I have two daughters.  
**Eve** Oh really? I have two sons and a daughter. David and Andrew are in college, and Carla's in high school...  
**Taxi driver** OK. Here we are.  
**Eve** How much is that?  
**Taxi driver** That's \$87.50.  
**Eve** Oh. Here's \$100. Keep the change.  
**Taxi driver** Thanks. Have a good flight!  
**Eve** I need to hurry. I'm late!  
**Announcement** This is the final call for flight BA641 to London Heathrow. All passengers please proceed to gate B5.

5.30

**Amy** Hi. Sorry I'm late. What time's the show?  
**Jenny** Don't worry. It's at eight o'clock.  
**Amy** What time is it now?  
**Jenny** It's OK. It's only twenty to eight.  
**Amy** What a great show!  
**Jenny** Yes, fantastic. I'm hungry. Do you want a pizza?  
**Amy** What time is it?  
**Jenny** Um, quarter to eleven.  
**Amy** It's late and I'm tired.  
**Jenny** Come on. I know a really good Italian restaurant near here.  
**Amy** Oh, OK. Let's go.

6.12

**I** Hannah is a concert planner. She has a son, Kit, who's three years old.  
**I** Hannah, what time do you usually get up?  
**H** I get up at 7:00. But I also get up in the night because Kit usually calls me. I tell him to sleep, but he usually comes into my bed.  
**I** Do you usually feel tired?  
**H** Yes, I always feel tired!  
**I** Do you take a shower or a bath in the morning?

**H** I turn on the TV for Kit and then I take a bath in five minutes.  
**I** Do you always have breakfast?  
**H** Yes, I need breakfast every day!  
**I** Where do you have it?  
**H** I have it in a café on the way to work.  
**I** What do you have for breakfast?  
**H** I have a coffee and sometimes I have some toast with avocado. It's delicious.  
**I** What time do you go to work?  
**H** The perfect time to leave the house is at 8:00, but we usually leave at twenty after eight.  
**I** Do you usually need to hurry in the morning?  
**H** Yes, always!  
**I** Do you like mornings?  
**H** Yes. I love mornings.  
**I** Why?  
**H** Because I love my job, and I'm happy to go to work!

7.2

**I** Do you go out on Friday night?  
**P** Yes, my husband Ben and I always go out for dinner or a movie.  
**I** Where do you go?  
**P** We usually go to a nearby sushi restaurant because they have good food there. We sometimes meet friends there, too.  
**I** What time do you get up on Saturday and Sunday?  
**P** On Saturday at 5:00 a.m. On Sunday it depends. At about 9:00?  
**I** What do you usually do on Saturdays?  
**P** I work from 6:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. I'm a nurse and hospitals are open on Saturdays. Then after work I go to the supermarket and buy food for the week. In the evening, we usually stay at home and watch TV. We like to watch comedy shows on Netflix.  
**I** Where do you usually have lunch on Sunday?  
**P** With my sister and her family, or sometimes Ben's parents. My sister's husband cooks meat on a grill, and it's really good! He's the cook in the family.  
**I** Are you tired on Sunday evening?  
**P** Yes, because in the afternoon we need to do housework. Cleaning, washing, things like that.  
**I** Do you do the same thing every weekend?  
**P** Yeah – more or less. Except when we're on vacation.  
**I** What's your favorite part of the weekend?  
**P** Friday night, definitely!





7.18

- 1 **A** Excuse me. Can you answer a few questions?  
**B** Sure.  
**A** Do you like the *Alien* movies?  
**B** I like the first one. It's great. I don't know the others.  
**A** OK, thanks.
- 2 **A** Do you like the *Alien* movies?  
**B** Yes. They're amazing.  
**A** Do you like Charlize Theron in *Alien: Prometheus*?  
**B** She's OK, but I prefer Sigourney Weaver.
- 3 **A** Do you like the *Alien* movies?  
**B** No, I hate science fiction movies. I think they're awful.
- 4 **A** Do you like the *Alien* movies?  
**B** Yes, I love them. And the actors are fantastic.  
**A** Do you like Michael Fassbender?  
**B** I really like him. I think he's great.
- 5 **A** Do you like the *Alien* movies?  
**B** Sorry, I don't know them.

7.28

- Rob** Dad!  
**Henry** Rob, hi!  
**Rob** Hi. This is for you.  
**Henry** For me? It's my favorite. Thanks Rob! But why?  
**Rob** For your birthday of course! Happy birthday!  
**Henry** Rob, it isn't my birthday today! My birthday's on the 2nd of July. Today's the 2nd of June.  
**Rob** Oh no!  
**Henry** Don't worry. Come in!

7.30

- Jenny** Hello?  
**Rob** Hello. Is that, uh, Jennifer Zielinski?  
**Jenny** Yes. Who's that?  
**Rob** This is Rob Walker.  
**Jenny** I'm sorry, who?  
**Rob** Rob Walker. I work for *London 24seven*. We need to talk about your trip to London in March. Uh, you arrive on the 12th of March and you leave on the 19th, is that right?  
**Jenny** I'm really sorry Mr. Walker...uh, Rob, but I'm not at work. Today is a holiday here.  
**Rob** A holiday?  
**Jenny** Yes, you know, it's Thanksgiving. I'm at my parent's house, with my family.  
**Rob** Thanksgiving. Of course. Sorry. We don't have Thanksgiving in England.  
**Jenny** No problem. Listen, call me on Monday at work. No, not Monday, Tuesday.  
**Rob** Tuesday the third of December?  
**Jenny** Yes.  
**Jenny's mom** Jenny! Hurry up!  
**Jenny** Talk to you on Tuesday. Thanks for calling.  
**Rob** Bye.  
**Jenny** Bye.

8.10

- 1 **A** Excuse me, can I sit here?  
**B** Uh, yes, I think it's free.  
**A** Thanks.
- 2 **A** Can I help you?  
**B** Do you have this T-shirt in large?  
**A** Just a moment. Sorry, we only have small and medium right now. I can call and see if they have a large in another store?  
**B** No, that's OK, thanks.
- 3 **A** Are you ready to order?  
**B** Yes, can I have the burger, but with salad, not fries?  
**A** Yes, ma'am, that's fine. And for you, sir?  
**B** The pasta, please.  
**A** And to drink?
- 4 **A** Hey! You can't sing here.  
**B** Why not?  
**A** Because you need a permit.  
**B** Where can I get a permit?  
**A** You need to go online and look for...

9.6

- 1 **W** Oh look! An LA Galaxy soccer shirt. It's perfect for Henry!  
**M** Yes, good idea. Oh...it's very expensive.  
**W** Soccer shirts are always expensive. OK. What we can get for Jessica?  
**M** She likes soccer, too.  
**W** Yes, but she never wears soccer shirts. What about this bag?  
**M** I don't know. Does she like bags?  
**W** She loves bags...
- 2 **W** Emilio, do we need swimming things?  
**M** I can look at their website. Can you see my camera?  
**W** Yes, here it is. Do you want me to put the camera in the suitcase or in your bag?  
**M** In the suitcase, please. OK, here's the page. Yes, it has a swimming pool.  
**W** Great.
- 3 **W** Good morning. How can I help you?  
**M** I need a car for three days.  
**W** What kind of car are you looking for?  
**M** A small car. It's just for me.  
**W** Front-wheel or all-wheel drive?  
**M** All-wheel drive, please.  
**W** Can I see your driver's license?  
**M** Yes, here you are.
- 4 **M** Is that a number 13?  
**W** Yes. I think it is. No, it's a 23.  
**M** Another 23? I don't believe it! That's the third one. And no 13.  
**W** Another one's coming now. Let's see. Yes. That's a 13.  
**M** At last!

9.17

- Interviewer** Hi, Neah. Tell us a little about your experience. Where are you working?  
**Neah** I'm working in a clothes store called Rue21.  
**Interviewer** What kind of clothes does Rue21 have?  
**Neah** Uh, well, clothes for men and women, casual clothes, pants, T-shirts, sweaters, things like that.  
**Interviewer** What do you do every day?  
**Neah** Well, uh, I help the customers find the clothes that they're looking for. It's a big store and it has a lot of things. People sometimes can't see the things that they want.  
**Interviewer** Do you like working there?  
**Neah** Yes, I love it. The people are really nice to me. I'm making a lot of new friends.  
**Interviewer** Is there anything you don't like?  
**Neah** Well, we can't sit down. We're standing up all the time. So that's really hard.

**Interviewer** But, in general, you're happy?

**Neah** Oh, yes. And when my internship ends, they say I can work here in the summer. That's great for me. I really like working in a clothes store.

**Interviewer** What do you wear at work?

**Neah** We wear clothes from the store.

**Interviewer** Are the clothes that you're wearing today from Rue21?

**Neah** Yes, they are!

### 9.21

**Steve** Hi, Jenny. What a surprise!

**Jenny** Hi, Steve!

**Steve** How are you? You're looking great.

**Jenny** Thanks. I'm well. How about you?

**Steve** I'm OK. Hey, it's starting to rain. Would you like a coffee?

**Jenny** Oh, thanks, Steve, but I have a meeting in an hour.

**Steve** Oh, come on Jenny. I'd like to talk to you.

**Jenny** OK. A quick coffee.

**Steve** Jenny, I'd like to ask you something.

**Jenny** Yes?

**Steve** There's an exhibition of Picasso at the MoMA next week. I know you love Picasso. Would you like to come with me?

**Jenny** Listen, Steve. I'm really busy at work at the moment. Next week isn't a good week for me.

**Steve** Sure. No problem. Maybe we can meet one evening, when you have more time and...have dinner or see a show?

**Jenny** Listen, Steve. I don't think it's a good idea. But thanks. Oh, look at the time! I need to go. Let's ask for the check.

### 10.5

**Eric** Louisa, time to get up.

**Louisa** OK. What time is it?

**Eric** It's six-thirty. Breakfast is at seven.

**Louisa** Is it a nice day?

**Eric** Let's see. Louisa, quick! Come here! Look at that!

**Louisa** What is it?

**Eric** Look! Over there.

**Louisa** Where?

**Eric** There. In the lake. There! Can't you see? There's something in the lake. It's moving. Can you see it now?

**Louisa** Yes. What is it?

**Eric** I don't know. Quick, take a photo with your phone.

**Louisa** I can't see it now. Can you?

**Eric** No, I can't. I can't see anything now. Let's see those photos, Louisa. Wow! I don't believe it. Look at that...

### 10.14

**D** Are you Walter Miller?

**W** Yes, I am.

**D** What do you do, Walter?

**W** I'm a taxi driver.

**D** And where do you live?

**W** At 14 Market Street.

**D** Do you know the suspect, Jason Brown?

**W** Yes, I know him. He's my friend. We were at school together.

**D** Where were you yesterday afternoon at 5 o'clock?

**W** Yesterday at 5 o'clock... I was in my taxi. I was in my taxi all afternoon.

**D** And at 7 o'clock? Where were you then?

**W** I was in a restaurant. Pasta Palace.

**D** Where is it exactly?

**W** On South Street. Near the station.

**D** Were you alone?

**W** No, I was with Jason.

**D** Were you only with Jason?

**W** Uh, no. My wife was there. And Jason's wife.

**D** Jason's wife? She was with you?

**W** Uh, yes.

**D** Are you sure?

**W** Yes...no...I can't remember.

**D** You can't remember who you were with yesterday? Very interesting...

### 11.7

Miriam really liked her job – it was very interesting. I worked from home, so I was with the children a lot and I loved it. In general, life was good. It was cheap – cheaper than in the UK. We joined a sports club, where the children learned to swim, and I played a lot of tennis, one of my favorite sports.

The people in Durham were very friendly. They often invited us to their homes. It was easy to meet people at the sports club, or at the university where Miriam worked. And there were so many new places to see! On weekends, we visited some of the beautiful national parks. They were very different from English parks! In one park there was a sign saying "don't disturb the snakes" – Sacha loved it!

I also remember a trip to a country music festival at a blueberry farm. It was fantastic. First we listened to the music, and then we picked a lot of blueberries – they're Elena's favorite fruit. But after that trip she didn't want to eat a blueberry for at least two weeks!

We stayed in Durham for a year. After that we returned to England because my wife's job finished. But we loved our life in the US, and we're thinking of going back there in maybe two or three years.

### 11.22

**Rob** Oh \*\*\*\*. I don't believe it. Excuse me, this cash machine isn't working. Is there another one near here?

**Man** Yeah, there's one in HSBC. Go straight on, turn right. Go straight on for a bit and it's on the left.

**Rob** Thanks.

### 11.23

**Jenny** Hello?

**Rob** Hi, Jennifer?

**Jenny** Yes.

**Rob** This is Rob Walker from London 24/7. I'm phoning to check you got the email I sent you.

**Jenny** Uh, what was it about?

**Rob** It was the information about your hotel for next week.

**Jenny** Just a second. Yes, here it is. Hotel Indigo, London Street. Where is it exactly?

**Rob** It's very near Paddington Station. You can get the Heathrow Express train from the airport to the station. It only takes about 15 minutes.

**Jenny** OK, that's great. Can I walk to the hotel from the station?

**Rob** Yes, it's very near. Can you see it on the map?

**Jenny** Ah yes, I have it now.

**Rob** Turn left when you leave the station. Then go straight on for a bit and turn right into London Street. The hotel's opposite Norfolk Square.

**Jenny** Great.

**Rob** I can come to the hotel in the morning on your first day. We can walk to the office together.

**Jenny** OK. See you then.

**Rob** Bye.

**Jenny** Bye.



موسسه زبان دهخدا  
dehkhodaedu.com

### 1A verb be (singular): I and you

1.4 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Full form	Contraction
+ I am Helen. You are Tom.	I'm Helen. You're Tom.
- I am not Ellen. You are not Dom.	I'm not Ellen. You aren't Dom.

- I'm Helen. **NOT** #mHelen.
- I'm Helen. **NOT** AmHelen.

**Negative contractions**  
I am not = I'm not  
You are not = You aren't **OR** You're not

1.5 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

?	+	-
Am I in room 2?	Yes, <b>you are.</b>	No, <b>you aren't.</b>
Are you Mike?	Yes, <b>I am.</b>	No, <b>I'm not.</b>

**Word order in questions**  
+ I'm in room 2.      You're Tom.  
? **Am I** in room 2?      **Are you** Tom?

### 1B verb be (singular): he, she, it

1.22 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Full form	Contraction
+ I am from the US. You are from Peru. He is from Brazil. She is from Spain. It is from China.	I'm from the US. You're from Peru. He's from Brazil. She's from Spain. It's from China.



• he = man



she = woman



it = thing

1.23 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Full form	Contraction
+ I am not from Canada. You are not from Vietnam. He is not from Korea. She is not from Japan. It is not from Mexico.	I'm not from Canada. You aren't from Vietnam. He isn't from Korea. She isn't from Japan. It isn't from Mexico.

**Negative contractions**  
He is not = He isn't **OR** He's not

1.24 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

?	+	-
Am I in room 2?	Yes, <b>you are.</b>	No, <b>you aren't.</b>
Are you from England?	Yes, <b>I am.</b>	No, <b>I'm not.</b>
Is he from Chile?	Yes, <b>he is.</b>	No, <b>he isn't.</b>
Is she from Turkey?	Yes, <b>she is.</b>	No, <b>she isn't.</b>
Is it good?	Yes, <b>it is.</b>	No, <b>it isn't.</b>

**Word order in questions**  
+ She's from Argentina.  
? **Is she** from Argentina?  
? With **What** and **Where**:  
What's your name? Where are you from?  
Where's he from?

# 1A

a Complete with *I'm* or *You're*.



Hello. *I'm* Maria.  
What's your name?



1 Hi. \_\_\_\_\_  
Tony.



2 Hello. \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher.  
\_\_\_\_\_ in my class.



3 \_\_\_\_\_ in  
room 4.



4 \_\_\_\_\_ in  
room 3.

b Complete with *I'm not* or *You aren't*.



*I'm not* Tom. I'm Tony.



1 \_\_\_\_\_ in room 5.  
You're in room 4.



2 \_\_\_\_\_ in room 6.  
You're in room 7.



3 \_\_\_\_\_ Marina.  
I'm Marisa.

c Make questions.

You're Sam. *Are you Sam?*

- 1 I'm in room 4. \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 You're Silvia. \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 I'm in room 3. \_\_\_\_\_?

d Complete the conversations. Use contractions where possible.

A Hello. *Are* you Liz? B No, *I'm not*. I'm Maria.

- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ I in room 8? B No, you \_\_\_\_\_. You're in room 6.
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ you in room 4? B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I'm in room 5.
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ you Henry? B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. Nice to meet you!
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ I in your class? B Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher.

p.6

# 1B

a Complete with *He's*, *She's*, or *It's*.

A Where's London?

B *It's* in England.

- 1 A Where's Lisa from?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from Canada.
- 2 A Where's Ankara?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ in Turkey.
- 3 A Where's Mario from?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from Brazil.
- 4 A Where's Beijing?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ in China.
- 5 A Where's Charles from?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from England.
- 6 A Where's Maria from?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from Peru.
- 7 A Where's Toronto?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada.
- 8 A Where's Carlos from?  
B \_\_\_\_\_ from Mexico.

b Complete with *is*, *'s*, or *isn't*.

A *Is* Ana from Mexico? B No, she *isn't*. She *'s* from Spain.

- 1 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Osaka? \_\_\_\_\_ it in Japan?  
B Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ Mark from the US?  
B No, he \_\_\_\_\_ from Canada.
- 3 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ she from? B She \_\_\_\_\_ from Rio.
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ Robert from Canada?  
B No, he \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ from England.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ Lima in Mexico?  
B No, it \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ in Peru.

c Complete the conversations with the correct form of *be*. Use contractions where possible.

A *Are* you from Turkey? B No, *I'm not*. I *'m* from Spain.

- 1 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Manchester? \_\_\_\_\_ it in the UK?  
B Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ Alex from? \_\_\_\_\_ he from Mexico?  
B No, he \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ from the US.
- 3 A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ from Toronto.
- 4 A What \_\_\_\_\_ your name?  
B My name \_\_\_\_\_ Ana. I \_\_\_\_\_ from Chicago.  
A You \_\_\_\_\_ from Chicago! I \_\_\_\_\_ from Chicago, too! It \_\_\_\_\_ a great city.

p.8

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

### 2A verb *be* (plural): *we, you, they*

2.6 Listen and repeat the **examples**. Then read the rules.

	Full form	Contraction
be ⊕	I am Korean.	I'm Korean.
	You are Brazilian.	You're Brazilian.
	He is Spanish.	He's Spanish.
	She is Turkish.	She's Turkish.
	It is Japanese.	It's Japanese.
	<b>We are American.</b>	<b>We're American.</b>
	<b>You are Chilean.</b>	<b>You're Chilean.</b>
	<b>They are Peruvian.</b>	<b>They're Peruvian.</b>

• *you* = singular and plural



• *they* = men, women, and things

2.7 Listen and repeat the **examples**. Then read the rules.

	Full form	Contraction
be ⊖	I am not Korean.	I'm not Korean.
	You are not Brazilian.	You aren't Brazilian.
	He is not Spanish.	He isn't Spanish.
	She is not Turkish.	She isn't Turkish.
	It is not Japanese.	It isn't Japanese.
	<b>We are not American.</b>	<b>We aren't American.</b>
	<b>You are not Chilean.</b>	<b>You aren't Chilean.</b>
	<b>They are not Peruvian.</b>	<b>They aren't Peruvian.</b>

#### Negative contractions

We are not = **We aren't** OR **We're not**

You are not = **You aren't** OR **You're not**

They are not = **They aren't** OR **They're not**

2.8 Listen and repeat the **examples**. Then read the rules.

#### be plural, ⊕ and short answers

⊕	+	⊖
Am I in room 2?	Yes, you are.	No, you aren't.
Are you Linda?	Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Is he Brazilian?	Yes, he is.	No, he isn't.
Is she from Peru?	Yes, she is.	No, she isn't.
Is it good?	Yes, it is.	No, it isn't.
<b>Are we late?</b>	<b>Yes, you are.</b>	<b>No, you aren't.</b>
<b>Are you from the UK?</b>	<b>Yes, we are.</b>	<b>No, we aren't.</b>
<b>Are they Mexican?</b>	<b>Yes, they are.</b>	<b>No, they aren't.</b>

#### Word order in questions

⊕ **They're** from Canada.

⊕ **Are they** from Canada?

### 2B *Wh-* and *How* questions with *be*

2.18 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Question word(s)	Verb	Subject	
Who	's	Tom?	He's a friend.
What	's	your email?	johng@gmail.com.
Where	are	you from?	I'm from Toronto, Canada.
When	's	the concert?	It's on Tuesday.
How	are	you?	I'm fine, thanks.
How old	is	she?	She's ten.



#### Word order

⊕ Subject, verb

**They're** American.

⊕ Verb, subject

**Are they** American?

⊕ Question, verb, subject

**Where are they** from?

#### Contractions with question words

We can contract *is* after question words.

What's her name? = What is her name?

Where's he from? = Where is he from?

How's Anna? = How is Anna?

How old's Jan? = How old is Jan?

Don't contract *is* in a question when the last word is a pronoun (*he, she, it, etc.*).

How old is she? **NOT** ~~How old's she?~~

Where is he? **NOT** ~~Where's he?~~

## 2A

- a Change the **bold** word(s) to a pronoun: *you, he, she, it, we, they*.

Luisa and **Pedro** are from Lima. They're from Lima.

- Diana and I** are in room 4. \_\_\_\_\_'re in room 4.
- The Taj Mahal** is in India. \_\_\_\_\_'s in India.
- Are **Mark and James** in Mexico? Are \_\_\_\_\_ in Mexico?
- Where is **Rosa** from? Where's \_\_\_\_\_ from?
- Mira and Rita** are Brazilian. \_\_\_\_\_'re Brazilian.
- Paul** isn't in the hotel. \_\_\_\_\_ isn't in the hotel.
- You and Sara** are in class 2. \_\_\_\_\_'re in class 2.
- Jim and I** are from the US. \_\_\_\_\_'re from the US.
- Honda and Toyota** are Japanese. \_\_\_\_\_'re Japanese.

- b Make  or  sentences, or . Use *we, you, or they*.

Luisa and I / Brazilian

We're Brazilian.

You and Henry / teachers

You aren't teachers.

/ Liz and Tom / in Egypt

Are they in Egypt?

1 Ana and I / Mexican

\_\_\_\_\_

2 You, Max, and John / in class 4

\_\_\_\_\_

3 / Mike and Peter / English

\_\_\_\_\_

4 / Linda and I / in class 4

\_\_\_\_\_

5 You and Lucy / in class 4

\_\_\_\_\_

6 Lucy and I / on vacation

\_\_\_\_\_

- c Complete the conversations. Use contractions where possible.

They aren't French. They 're Spanish, from Madrid.

1 A \_\_\_\_\_ you from the US?

B No, we \_\_\_\_\_ American. We \_\_\_\_\_ English.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_ they Mexican?

B Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_. They \_\_\_\_\_ from Mexico City.

3 Kareem is from Riyadh. He \_\_\_\_\_ from Jeddah.

4 Sorry, you \_\_\_\_\_ in room 20. You're in room 22.

5 A \_\_\_\_\_ your name Maria?

B No, it \_\_\_\_\_ Maria. It \_\_\_\_\_ Marta.

6 A \_\_\_\_\_ we late?

B Yes, you \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ 9:30!

7 I \_\_\_\_\_ Sara Smith. I'm Sara Simpson.

8 They \_\_\_\_\_ from New York. They're from Texas.

9 A Where's Laura from?

B She \_\_\_\_\_ from Recife.

A \_\_\_\_\_ Recife in Brazil?

B Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.

p.12

## 2B

- a Complete with a question word.

How How old What (x2) When  
Where (x2) Who (x2)

A How are you?

B Fine, thanks. And you?

1 A \_\_\_\_\_'s the concert?

B On Tuesday at 7:30.

A \_\_\_\_\_ is it?

B Chicago.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_'s your name?

B Jessica.

3 A \_\_\_\_\_ is she?

B She's my friend, Julia.

A \_\_\_\_\_'s she from?

B Mexico.

4 A \_\_\_\_\_'s your email?

B It's jbl098@yooahoo.com.

5 A \_\_\_\_\_'s that?

B My brother Adrian.

A \_\_\_\_\_ is he?

B He's 25.

- b Order the words to make questions.

are how old you? How old are you?

1 she who is? \_\_\_\_\_

2 what number your cell phone is? \_\_\_\_\_

3 is where room 4? \_\_\_\_\_

4 married is Marta? \_\_\_\_\_

5 your English class is when? \_\_\_\_\_

6 your number is phone 555-0362? \_\_\_\_\_

7 is his email what? \_\_\_\_\_

8 Pedro how is old? \_\_\_\_\_

- c Write questions to complete the conversation.

A What's your name?

B Pedro Guzman.

A <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? B Monterrey.

A <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Monterrey? B It's in Mexico.

A <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? B pguzman@gmail.com.

A Thanks. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? B 81 8150 9304.

A <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? B I'm 19.

p.14

### 3A singular and plural nouns; a / an

3.3 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.









**Singular nouns; a / an**

	
What is it? It's a <b>book</b> .	What is it? It's a <b>key</b> .
	
What is it? It's an <b>umbrella</b> .	What is it? It's an <b>ID card</b> .

- What is it? **NOT** What's it?
- We use a / an + singular noun.
- We use a + word beginning with a consonant, e.g., a bag, a phone.
- We use an + word beginning with a vowel, e.g., an umbrella.

3.4 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

**Singular nouns; a / an**

	What is it? It's a book.		What are they? They're <b>books</b> .
	What is it? It's a key.		What are they? They're <b>keys</b> .
	What is it? It's a watch.		What are they? They're <b>watches</b> .
	What is it? It's a dictionary.		What are they? They're <b>dictionaries</b> .

#### Spelling rules





Singular	Plural	
1 a bag a vacation	<b>bags</b> <b>vacations</b>	add -s
2 a class	<b>classes</b> /ɪz/	add -es (after ch, sh, s, ss, x)
3 a country	<b>countries</b>	consonant + y = y -ies

#### the

Look at **the** board. Open **the** door. Close **the** windows.  
We use **the** + singular or plural nouns, e.g., **the** door, **the** windows.

### 3B this / that / these / those

3.14 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

	What's <b>this</b> ? It's a key.		What are <b>these</b> ? They're keys.
	What's <b>that</b> ? It's a cat.		What are <b>those</b> ? They're cats.

- We use **this** / **these** for things near you (things here).
- We use **that** / **those** for things that aren't near you (things there or over there).
- **this** / **that** = singular, **these** / **those** = plural.
- We also use **this** / **that** / **these** / **those** for people, e.g., *This is my brother. Who are those girls over there?*

#### this, that, these, those

**This, that, these, and those** are pronouns or adjectives.  
**This** is my book. (= pronoun)  
**This** book is very nice. (= adjective)

#### here, there, over there

		
here	there	over there


### 3A


a Complete the chart.


Singular	Plural
It's a pen.	<i>They're pens.</i>
1 _____.	They're phones.
2 It's a watch.	_____.
3 _____.	They're umbrellas.
4 It's a dictionary.	_____.
5 It's a key.	_____.
6 It's a city.	_____.
7 _____.	They're emails.
8 It's a passport.	_____.
9 _____.	They're tablets.


b Write questions and answers.


*What is it?*


1 \_\_\_\_\_?  *It's a laptop.*

2 \_\_\_\_\_? 

3 \_\_\_\_\_? 

4 \_\_\_\_\_? 

5 \_\_\_\_\_? 

6 \_\_\_\_\_? 

p.18

### 3B

a Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *this*, *that*, *these*, or *those*.



*This* isn't a very good book.



1 Are \_\_\_\_\_ your T-shirts?



2 \_\_\_\_\_ are my children.



3 **A** Is \_\_\_\_\_ your cell phone over there?  
**B** No, my cell phone's here.



4 Look at \_\_\_\_\_! They're great!



5 Who's \_\_\_\_\_? Is he your brother?

b Look at the pictures. Circle the correct word(s).



**Meg** What is this / that?

**Joe** <sup>1</sup> They're / <sup>2</sup> It's a key chain from New York.

**Meg** Oh, OK.

**Joe** And <sup>3</sup> these / those are sunglasses. <sup>4</sup> It's / They're great!



**Meg** Are <sup>5</sup> these / those mugs?


**Joe** Yes, <sup>6</sup> it is / they are. For our coffee. And <sup>7</sup> that / this is a cap for Joey.

**Meg** What <sup>8</sup> 's that / are those?

**Joe** <sup>9</sup> It's / They're a T-shirt. It's for you!

**Meg** Oh...thanks.

p.21

 Go online to review the grammar for each lesson



## 4A possessive adjectives; possessive 's

4.9 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

### Possessive adjectives

I'm from the US.	<b>My</b> name is Sara.
You're Canadian.	<b>Your</b> name is Kim.
He's from China.	<b>His</b> name is Ming.
She's Japanese.	<b>Her</b> name is Satoko.
It's a Turkish restaurant.	<b>Its</b> name is Kebob Kitchen.
We're from Brazil.	<b>Our</b> names are Selma and Luis.
You're Chilean.	<b>Your</b> names are Matias and Pia.
They're from Mexico.	<b>Their</b> names are Pedro and Maria.

- your names, our books, their coats **NOT** yours names, ours books, theirs coats
- its = for things or animals, e.g.,  
Pizzeria Marco is a good restaurant. **Its** phone number is 212-555-3387.  
Senegal is in Africa. **Its** flag is red, yellow, and green.  
Look at that fish! **Its** eyes are yellow.

### It's or its?

It's = it is **It's** a Turkish restaurant.  
Its = possessive **Its** name is Kebob Kitchen.

4.10 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

### Possessive 's

This is Jack's car.  
Ella is Ben's wife.  
Maria is Carlos's sister.  
My sister's name is Molly.  
This is my parents' house.

- We use 's after a person to talk about family and things, e.g., *Ann's brother, Jim's car.*
- We use ' after plural people, e.g., *my brothers' room* (= two brothers).

### 's

She's American. Her name's Emma. ('s = is)  
Emma is Maria's daughter. ('s = possessive s)

### pronunciation of 's



's usually = /s/, e.g., Jack's or /z/, e.g., Maria's.  
's after a name that ends in s = /ɪz/, e.g., Carlos's = /'kɑrlosɪz/.

## 4B adjectives

4.19 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

- 1 An Audi is **expensive**. It's **fast**.
- 2 An Audi is an **expensive** car. It's a **fast** car.
- 3 They're **old** houses. My **glasses** are **new**.
- 4 He's **tall**. She's **tall**, too.



- 1 We use adjectives after the verb *be*, e.g.,  
*An Audi is expensive. NOT An Audi expensive is.*
- 2 We use adjectives before a noun, e.g.,  
*It's a fast car. NOT It's a car fast.*
- 3 Adjectives are the same for singular and plural:  
*It's an old house. They're old houses. NOT They're olds-houses.*
- 4 Adjectives are the same for  and .

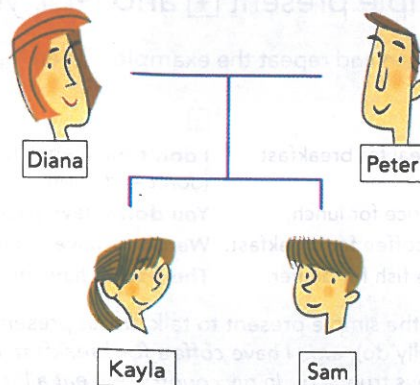
## 4A

a Complete with *my, your* (sing.), *his, her, its, your* (pl.), *our*, or *their*.

I'm American. My name is William.

- They're from Vietnam. \_\_\_\_\_ names are Bihn and Vu.
- A What's \_\_\_\_\_ name?  
B I'm Julia. Nice to meet you.
- He's Chilean. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Roberto.
- It's a good hotel, and \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant is fantastic.
- They're Mexican. \_\_\_\_\_ last name is Romero.
- I know a very good restaurant in Paris. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Café des Fleurs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ name is Tina. She's Brazilian.
- Lisa and Amy are American, but \_\_\_\_\_ husbands are British.
- A We're Jane and Mark Kelley. We have a reservation.  
B You're in room 22. This is \_\_\_\_\_ key.
- Here are \_\_\_\_\_ coffees. The cappuccino is for you, the latte is for Tom, and the Americano is for me.
- I'm Azra, and this is \_\_\_\_\_ husband, Ahmet.
- A Are those your children?  
B No, they aren't. \_\_\_\_\_ children are over there.

b Write sentences about Sam's family. Use the names and 's.



Kayla / Sam

Kayla is Sam's sister.

- Peter / Kayla
- Diana / Sam
- Kayla / Peter
- Peter / Diana
- Sam / Peter
- Diana / Peter
- Sam / Kayla

---



---



---



---



---



---



---

← p.24

## 4B

a Write sentences with *It's a / an* or *They're + adjective + noun*.



(great)

It's a great restaurant.



1 (old)

\_\_\_\_\_



2 (black)

\_\_\_\_\_



3 (new)

\_\_\_\_\_



4 (big)

\_\_\_\_\_



5 (expensive)

\_\_\_\_\_



6 (good)

\_\_\_\_\_

b Order the words to make sentences.

blue is bag my My bag is blue.

- beautiful a day it's  
\_\_\_\_\_
- is husband nice very Amy's  
\_\_\_\_\_
- questions difficult they're very  
\_\_\_\_\_
- phone cheap a is this  
\_\_\_\_\_
- photo it's terrible a  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Natsuko teacher is fantastic a  
\_\_\_\_\_
- very is cat old our  
\_\_\_\_\_
- restaurant this good a very isn't  
\_\_\_\_\_
- long it's a exercise very  
\_\_\_\_\_
- is ugly very dog their  
\_\_\_\_\_
- expensive Japanese movie tickets are very  
\_\_\_\_\_
- very this is small room a  
\_\_\_\_\_

← p.27

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

### 5A simple present $\oplus$ and $\ominus$ : I, you, we, they

5.5 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

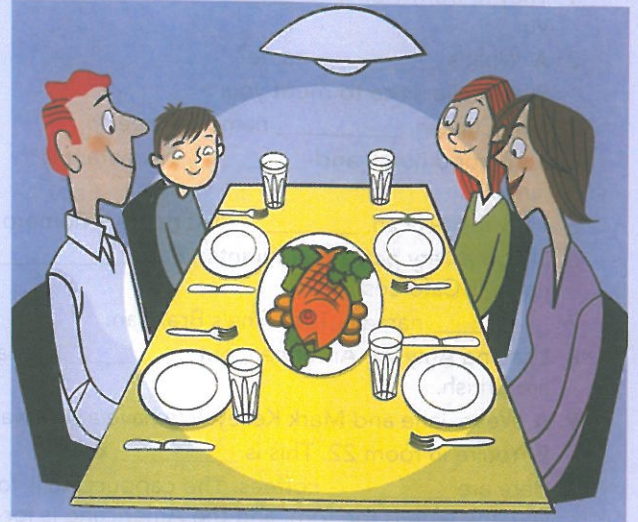
$\oplus$	$\ominus$
I <b>have</b> cereal for breakfast.	I <b>don't have</b> eggs for breakfast. (don't = do not)
You <b>have</b> rice for lunch.	You <b>don't have</b> pasta for lunch.
We <b>have</b> coffee for breakfast.	We <b>don't have</b> tea for breakfast.
They <b>have</b> fish for dinner.	They <b>don't have</b> meat for dinner.

We use the simple present to talk about present habits (= things we usually do), e.g., *I have coffee for breakfast*, and things that are always true, e.g., *In my country, we eat a lot of rice*.

Simple present  $\oplus$  and  $\ominus$  is the same for *I, you* (singular and plural), *we*, and *they*.

We make  $\ominus$  sentences with *don't*, e.g., *We don't have coffee*.

**NOT** *We not have coffee*.



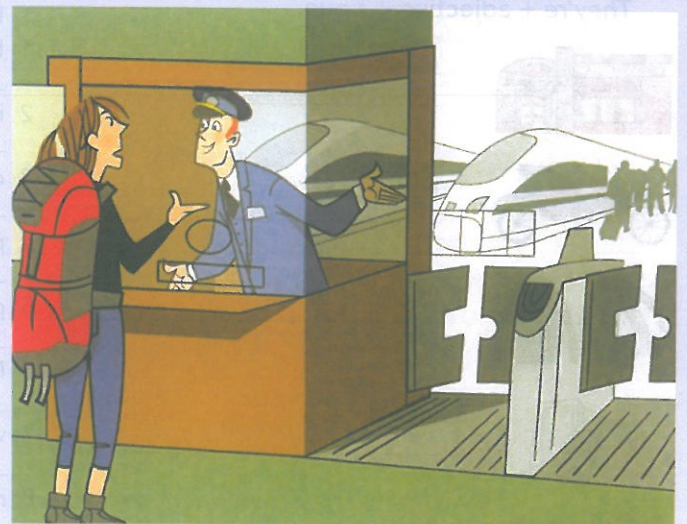
They have fish for dinner.

### 5B simple present $\text{?}$ : I, you, we, they

5.12 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

$\text{?}$	$\oplus$	$\ominus$
Do I <b>need</b> a ticket?	Yes, you <b>do</b> .	No, you <b>don't</b> .
Do you <b>live</b> near here?	Yes, I <b>do</b> .	No, I <b>don't</b> .
Do we <b>have</b> good seats?	Yes, we <b>do</b> .	No, we <b>don't</b> .
Do they <b>like</b> children?	Yes, they <b>do</b> .	No, they <b>don't</b> .







- Simple present  $\text{?}$  is the same for *I, you* (singular and plural), *we*, and *they*.
- We use *do* to make questions: *Do you live here?* **NOT** *You live here?* **OR** *Live you here?*
- Remember the word order for simple present questions is auxiliary (*do, does*), subject (*I, you, he, she, etc.*), base form (*need, live, etc.*).



Do I need a ticket?

## 5A

a Write  or  sentences.

- We (have)  We have sandwiches for lunch.
- I (not like)  I don't like fish.
- 1 I (have)  \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast.
- 2 We (not drink)  \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.
- 3 They (like)  \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 You (eat)  \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 We (eat)  \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.
- 6 I (not have)  \_\_\_\_\_ in my coffee.
- 7 You (not like)  \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 The children (eat)  \_\_\_\_\_.

b Complete with the **bold** verb. Write one  sentence and one  sentence.

**like**

I'm American, but I **don't like** burgers.  
My friends and I **like** fast food, especially pizzas and burgers.

1 **have**

People in the US \_\_\_\_\_ a big lunch. They usually have a sandwich.  
We always \_\_\_\_\_ lunch with my family on Sundays.

2 **eat**

I \_\_\_\_\_ meat. I'm a vegetarian.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fish and rice in Japan.

3 **drink**

You \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of coffee! It isn't good for you.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. They only drink tea.

4 **go**

We \_\_\_\_\_ to restaurants. They're very expensive.  
I don't have breakfast at home.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ to a café.

 p.31

## 5B

a Complete with *do* or *don't*.

- I **don't** live here. I live near the park.
- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ you have children?  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ like this photo. It's terrible.
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ you want a coffee?  
B No, thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ drink coffee.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ have brothers and sisters. I'm an only child.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ you listen to music on the radio?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ listen to pop music, but I listen to Classic FM. It's a classical music station.
- 6 A Excuse me, \_\_\_\_\_ you work here?  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. Sorry.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ you like American TV shows?  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV. I read.
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ you have a big family?  
B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I have two brothers and three sisters.
- 9 A \_\_\_\_\_ you speak Spanish?  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_. I only speak English.
- 10 A \_\_\_\_\_ you like Saturdays?  
B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I \_\_\_\_\_ work on weekends.

b Order the words to make sentences or questions.

- umbrella have do you an? Do you have an umbrella?
- 1 know don't I. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 here you near do live? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 like I soccer don't. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 sandwich want you a do? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 building work in the they tall. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 sisters two have I. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Spanish you speak do? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 don't big need a I car. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Chinese to classes you do go? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 a don't I watch have. \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 to in the music car listen you do? \_\_\_\_\_
- 12 work I don't Sundays on \_\_\_\_\_

 p.32

 Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

## 6A simple present: he, she, it

6.5 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

+	-	?	+	-
I work.	I don't work.	Do I work?	Yes, I do.	No, I don't.
You work.	You don't work.	Do you work?	Yes, I do.	No, I don't.
<b>He works.</b>	<b>He doesn't work.</b>	<b>Does he work?</b>	<b>Yes, he does.</b>	<b>No, he doesn't.</b>
<b>She works.</b>	<b>She doesn't work.</b>	<b>Does she work?</b>	<b>Yes, she does.</b>	<b>No, she doesn't.</b>
<b>It works.</b>	<b>It doesn't work.</b>	<b>Does it work?</b>	<b>Yes, it does.</b>	<b>No, it doesn't.</b>
We work.	We don't work.	Do we work?	Yes, we do.	No, we don't.
You work.	You don't work.	Do you work?	Yes, you do.	No, you don't.
They work.	They don't work.	Do they work?	Yes, they do.	No, they don't.

- Simple present  $\oplus$  he / she / it = verb + s.
- Simple present  $\ominus$  he / she / it = doesn't + verb (doesn't = does not).
- Simple present  $\text{?}$  he / she / it = Does + he / she / it + verb. Remember the word order for simple present questions (see 5B p.100).

Spelling rules 3rd person s		
I work in an office. I live in Peru.	He works in an office. He lives in Peru.	+ s
I watch CNN. I finish work at 8:00.	She watches CNN. The movie finishes at 8:00.	+ es (after ch, sh, s, ss, x)
I study history.	He studies history.	consonant + y = y -ies

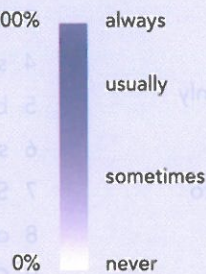
**have, go, do**  
These verbs are irregular in the he / she / it form of the simple present:  
I have he / she / it **has** /hæz/  
I do he / she / it **does** /dʌz/  
I go he / she / it **goes** /gouz/  
**? with What and Where**  
What do you do?  
Where does he work?

- Spelling rules for 3rd person s are the same as for plural nouns.

## 6B adverbs of frequency

6.16 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

I **always** have breakfast.  
They **usually** finish work at 5:00.  
She **sometimes** watches TV in the evening.  
He **never** eats meat.  
Does she **usually** go shopping on Saturday?  
What time do you **usually** get up?



- Be careful with the position of adverbs of frequency:  
I **always** have breakfast. **NOT** Always I have breakfast. I have **always** breakfast.  
Does she **usually** go shopping on Saturday? **NOT** Does **usually** she go shopping on Saturday? **Usually** does she go shopping on Saturday?
- With **never**, we use a  $\oplus$  verb: He **never** eats meat. **NOT** He **doesn't never** eat meat.



He never eats meat.

## 6A

### a Rewrite the sentences.

I live in an apartment. She *lives in an apartment*.

- They read magazines.  
He \_\_\_\_\_.
- I study Chinese.  
My sister \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you speak English?  
\_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_?
- I don't eat fish.  
My brother \_\_\_\_\_.
- Where do you work?  
Where \_\_\_\_\_ your wife \_\_\_\_\_?
- You don't speak Arabic.  
Tom \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you like cats?  
\_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_?
- I have two brothers.  
Andrew \_\_\_\_\_.
- What do you eat for lunch?  
What \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_?
- We watch a lot of TV.  
My mother \_\_\_\_\_.
- What do you do?  
What \_\_\_\_\_ your son \_\_\_\_\_?
- We don't need a new car.  
Maria \_\_\_\_\_.

### b Put the verb in (parentheses) in the correct form.

They *don't live* near here. (not live)

- She \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio in the car. (listen)
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ to college in Boston. (go)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ on weekends. (not work)
- \_\_\_\_\_ Angela \_\_\_\_\_ with her mother? (live)
- The show \_\_\_\_\_ at 9:30. (finish)
- She usually \_\_\_\_\_ fruit for breakfast. (have)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ TV on weekends. (not watch)
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ tea or coffee? (want)
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ your children \_\_\_\_\_ to school? (go)
- Linda \_\_\_\_\_ meat, fish, or eggs. She's a vegan. (not eat)
- \_\_\_\_\_ Tran \_\_\_\_\_ his new job? (like)
- Luisa \_\_\_\_\_ brothers or sisters. (not have)

➔ p.36

## 6B

### a Order the words to complete the sentences.

drink never coffee I

*I never drink coffee* after dinner.

- husband goes my sometimes  
\_\_\_\_\_ to the gym.
- take always I  
\_\_\_\_\_ a shower in the morning.
- usually we have  
\_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at home.
- go I never  
\_\_\_\_\_ to bed before 12:00.
- usually go they do  
\_\_\_\_\_ to work by bus?
- Jan has sometimes  
\_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich for lunch.
- close the does restaurant usually  
\_\_\_\_\_ late?
- goes she never  
\_\_\_\_\_ shopping after work.
- usually I do  
\_\_\_\_\_ my homework on the weekend.
- sometimes make I  
\_\_\_\_\_ fish for dinner.

### b Complete the sentences in the simple present.


Use a verb from the list and the adverb in (parentheses).

do drink (x2) eat finish get go  
have (x3) speak watch

He *never eats* meat for lunch. (never)

- Alex \_\_\_\_\_ to bed very late. (sometimes)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ housework on weekends. (always)
- Do you \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at home on weekends? (usually)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a bath, I \_\_\_\_\_ a shower. (never, always)
- My sister \_\_\_\_\_ up early. (always)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ English at work. (never)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ TV after dinner. (sometimes)
- They \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in the evening. (never)
- Does your husband \_\_\_\_\_ work at 7:30 p.m.? (usually)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ tea with milk, but I prefer it with lemon. (sometimes)

➔ p.38

 Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

### 7A word order in questions

7.5 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Questions with be			
?	Verb	Subject	
	Are	you	tired?
	Are	you	a student?
	Is	this	your coat?
	Is	the store	near here?
How old	are	you?	
Where	are	you	from?
What time	is	it?	
Why	are	you	late?
Who	are	you?	

- Word order
  - Subject Verb **They're** American.
  - Verb Subject **Are they** American?
  - Where are they** from?

7.6 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Questions with other verbs			
?	Auxiliary	Subject	Base form (= verb)
	Do	you	go out on Friday nights?
Where	do	you	go?
What	does	your sister	do?
What music	do	you	like?
When	does	Jane	go to the gym?
How	do	you	spell your name?
Who	does	she	live with?

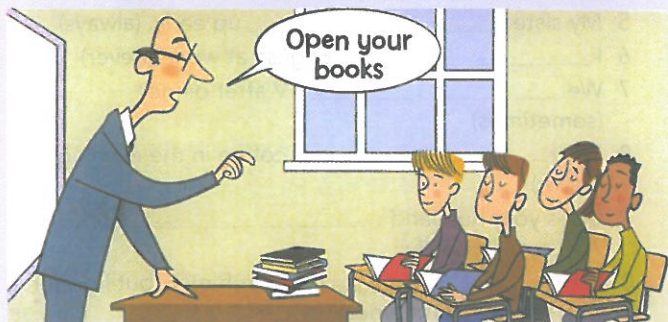
- Word order = Auxiliary, subject, base form  
*Do you go out on Friday night?*
- Word order = Question, auxiliary, subject, base form  
*Where do you go?*

### 7B imperatives; object pronouns: me, him, etc.

7.12 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Imperatives
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Come here! Sit down. Open your books.
<input type="checkbox"/> Don't talk. Don't worry. Don't be late.

- We use imperatives to give orders or instructions.
- Imperatives are the same for singular and plural.



7.13 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rule.

Subject pronoun	Object pronoun
I'm your teacher.	Listen to <b>me!</b>
<b>You're</b> beautiful.	I love <b>you.</b>
<b>He</b> goes to my gym.	I see <b>him</b> every week.
<b>She</b> never listens.	Don't talk to <b>her.</b>
It's a nice coat!	I want it for my birthday.
<b>We</b> aren't friends.	They don't speak to <b>us.</b>
<b>They're</b> good books.	I want to read <b>them.</b>

- We use object pronouns (*me, him, etc.*) as the object of a verb or after prepositions.

## 7A

- a Complete the sentences with a question word from the list.

How (x2) What (x2) What time  
When Where (x2) Who

- A *What time* do you go to bed?  
B At about eleven o'clock.
- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ music does she like?  
B Jazz and pop.
- 2 A \_\_\_\_\_ old is your sister?  
B She's 19.
- 3 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you want for lunch?  
B A sandwich and a coffee, please.
- 4 A \_\_\_\_\_'s that woman with Bob?  
B His sister.
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you have English classes?  
B On Thursdays.
- 6 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you spell your last name?  
B D-A-V-I-S.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ does your wife work?  
B In an office.
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ do you usually go on vacation?  
B We usually go to the beach.

- b Order the words to make questions.

- live you do where? *Where do you live?*
- 1 your where work do brothers? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 your is this phone? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 movie the what start does time? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Spanish does speak husband your? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 is how family your? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 we late are for class? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 children sushi do your like? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 your finish what does time work wife? \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 you are tired why? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 play with you do who tennis? \_\_\_\_\_

- c Complete the questions with *is, are, do, or does*.

- Where *does* your sister live?
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ soccer your favorite sport?
- 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ you relax on weekends?
- 3 What movies \_\_\_\_\_ on TV this weekend?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ you hungry? It's time for lunch.
- 5 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you usually have lunch on Sundays?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ your son play a lot of computer games?
- 7 How old \_\_\_\_\_ your teacher?
- 8 What TV shows \_\_\_\_\_ your husband like?
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ you play sports or exercise during the week?

← p.43

## 7B

- a Complete the sentences with a  $\oplus$  or  $\ominus$  imperative of a verb from the list.

close eat go listen make play  
open read sit speak worry

- Don't listen* to Jim. He always says silly things.
- 1 It's very cold in here. \_\_\_\_\_ the window, please.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ those eggs! I want to make an omelet.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the piano! The baby's in bed!
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ slowly, please. I don't understand you.
- 5 You're very tired. \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ pasta for lunch! I don't like it.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ down and \_\_\_\_\_ your books to page 43.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ my emails! They're private.
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_! It isn't a big problem.

- b Complete the sentences with an object pronoun.

- She's a great singer. I really like *her*.
- 1 I have an old bike, but I don't use \_\_\_\_\_ very much.
- 2 Jim likes Sarah, but she doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My children love music. I sing to \_\_\_\_\_ every night.
- 4 A Is Emma nice?  
B I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ very well.
- 5 These are my new shoes. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 I'm hungry. Can you make \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich, please?
- 7 Our children usually have lunch with \_\_\_\_\_ on weekends.
- 8 I don't have my car today. Can I go to the concert with \_\_\_\_\_?

← p.44



### 8A can / can't

8.6 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

#### can / can't: permission and possibility

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
I <b>can</b> park here.	I <b>can't</b> park there. (can't = cannot)
<b>You can</b> sit here.	<b>You can't</b> sit there.
<b>He can</b> help us.	<b>He can't</b> help us.
<b>We can</b> have lunch outside.	<b>We can't</b> have lunch outside.
<b>They can</b> come to dinner tonight.	<b>They can't</b> come to dinner tonight.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Can I park here?	Yes, <b>you can</b> .	No, <b>you can't</b> .
Can <b>he</b> help us?	Yes, <b>he can</b> .	No, <b>he can't</b> .
Can <b>they</b> come to dinner tonight?	Yes, <b>they can</b> .	No, <b>they can't</b> .

- We use **can / can't** for permission or possibility.
- **can / can't** is the same for **I, you, he, she**, etc.
- = Can I sit here? **NOT** ~~Do I can sit here?~~

#### Can you drive?

We also use **can** to talk about things you know how to do, e.g., *Can you drive? I can't swim. I can play the guitar.*

#### you

You can be personal or impersonal.

*Can you help me?* = personal (singular or plural)

*You can't park here.* (= people in general)

### 8B like / love / hate + verb + -ing

8.14 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

What **do you like doing** on the weekend?

I **love cooking**.

I **like going for a walk**.

I **don't like studying**.

I **hate getting up** early.

- We use verb + **-ing** after **like, love, hate**.

#### Spelling rules for -ing form

Base form	Verb + -ing	Spelling
read	I like <b>reading</b> .	+ -ing
fly	She doesn't like <b>flying</b> .	
bike ride	He loves <b>bike riding</b> .	e + -ing
drive	I hate <b>driving</b> at night.	
swim	We like <b>swimming</b> .	one vowel + one consonant = double consonant + -ing
shop	He doesn't like <b>shopping</b> .	



I hate getting up early.

## 8A

a Write sentences or questions with *can* or *can't*.

You / play soccer here

You can't play soccer here.

1 / we sit here

\_\_\_\_\_

2 I / drink this

\_\_\_\_\_

3 James / help us tomorrow

\_\_\_\_\_

4 / you come to lunch on Sunday

\_\_\_\_\_

5 You / finish work early today

\_\_\_\_\_

6 We / park here

\_\_\_\_\_

7 / we watch TV after dinner

\_\_\_\_\_

8 He / go to school today

\_\_\_\_\_

b Complete with *can* or *can't* and a verb from the list.

come drive go listen stay swim use walk watch

You **can't use** phones in class.

1 I \_\_\_\_\_ to work tomorrow. My sister needs the car.

2 A \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ with you?

B No, I'm sorry. We only have one bedroom.

3 A \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ here?

B No, the water's very cold and dirty.

4 The restaurant's nearby. We \_\_\_\_\_ there.

5 Where \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch? I'm hungry.

6 You \_\_\_\_\_ TV when you finish your homework.

7 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to dinner at my house on Saturday?

B I'm sorry, I can't. It's my mother's birthday.

8 A Excuse me. You \_\_\_\_\_ to music in the museum.

B Sorry!

← p.49

## 8B

a Write the *-ing* form of the verbs.

swim

swimming

1 meet \_\_\_\_\_

2 stop \_\_\_\_\_

3 buy \_\_\_\_\_

4 go \_\_\_\_\_

5 cry \_\_\_\_\_

6 write \_\_\_\_\_

7 run \_\_\_\_\_

8 bike ride \_\_\_\_\_

9 get \_\_\_\_\_

10 drive \_\_\_\_\_

11 sit \_\_\_\_\_

12 use \_\_\_\_\_

13 put \_\_\_\_\_

14 have \_\_\_\_\_

15 finish \_\_\_\_\_

b Write sentences or questions. Use the correct form of *like* or *love*, and the *-ing* form of the **bold** verb.

I / like / **go** / to bed late

I don't like going to bed late.

1 She / like / **cook**

\_\_\_\_\_

2 you / like / **travel**

\_\_\_\_\_

3 I / love / **shop** / for presents

\_\_\_\_\_

4 They / like / **watch** / TV

\_\_\_\_\_

5 your father / like / **play** / chess

\_\_\_\_\_

6 George / like / **exercise**

\_\_\_\_\_

7 My mother / love / **read** / detective novels

\_\_\_\_\_

8 We / like / **fly**

\_\_\_\_\_

← p.50

### 9A present continuous

9.2 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

#### Present continuous + and -

+	-
I'm working.	I'm not working.
You're sitting in my chair.	You aren't sitting in my chair.
He's playing soccer.	He isn't playing soccer.
She's taking a shower.	She isn't taking a shower.
It's raining.	It isn't raining.
We're having dinner.	We aren't having dinner.
They're listening to the teacher.	They aren't listening to the teacher.

- We use **be + verb + -ing** to talk about things that are happening now / at the moment. *I can't talk now. I'm driving.* **NOT** *I drive.*
- See 8B p.106 for the spelling rules for the -ing form.

#### Present continuous ?, ✓ and X

Question	be	Subject	Verb + -ing	Answer
	Are	you	working now?	Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
	Is	she	taking a shower?	Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.
	Are	they	listening to the teacher?	Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.
Where	are	you	going?	To a party.
What	's	he	doing?	He's watching TV at home.

#### Word order

- + Subject, be, verb + -ing: **You are working today.**
- ? be, subject, verb + -ing: **Are you working today?**
- ? Question, be, subject, verb + -ing: **Where are you working today?**

### 9B present continuous or simple present?

9.13 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

- I work in an office. I usually wear a suit.
- Today I'm working at home. I'm wearing jeans.

1 We use the simple present for things we usually do.

We often use the simple present with *always, usually, sometimes, never, e.g., I sometimes have lunch in my office. I never get up early on Saturday.*

2 We use the present continuous for things happening now / at the moment / today.

*Jane's in the kitchen. She's cooking.*

A What are you doing here? B I'm waiting for a friend.

## 9A

- a Write sentences in the present continuous for each picture. Use contractions.



He 's taking a shower. (have)



1 I can't talk now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (drive)



2 You \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong exercise! (do)



3 She \_\_\_\_\_ at home today. (work)



4 He \_\_\_\_\_ soccer. (play)



5 We \_\_\_\_\_ for an exam. (study)



6 They \_\_\_\_\_ in the river. (swim)

- b Complete the sentences with the verb in (parentheses) in the present continuous ⊕, ⊖, or ⊗. Use contractions where possible.

She 's eating pasta. (eat)

- 1 A Excuse me! You \_\_\_\_\_ in my seat. (sit)  
B Sorry!
- 2 A Dad \_\_\_\_\_ this TV show. He \_\_\_\_\_. (not watch, sleep)  
B OK. You can watch your show then.
- 3 A Hello! What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ here? (do)  
B I \_\_\_\_\_. It's Jim's birthday tomorrow. (shop)
- 4 A I \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym now. Do you want to come with me? (go)  
B Great idea. I \_\_\_\_\_ today! (not work)
- 5 A \_\_\_\_\_ Alice \_\_\_\_\_ her homework? (do)  
B No, she isn't. She \_\_\_\_\_ computer games. (play)
- 6 A Do you want my newspaper? I \_\_\_\_\_ it. (not read)  
B No, thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ a movie on my laptop. (watch)
- 7 A Is that your brother?  
B No, my brother's over there. He \_\_\_\_\_ to his friends. (talk)
- 8 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ a good time in Rio? (have)  
B Yes, we are. We \_\_\_\_\_ a great time! (have)
- 9 A Hello, can I speak to Marisa?  
B Sorry, she \_\_\_\_\_ her mother on Skype. Who is this, please? (talk)  
A It's Yuko, from English class. I \_\_\_\_\_ about tonight's homework. (call)
- 10 A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ up now? You're late for school! (get)  
B Yes, I am. What time is it?

← p.54

## 9B

- a Circle the correct form.

Hiro usually goes / is going to school in the morning, but today he studies / 's studying at home.

- 1 A Hi, Sue. Where are you? In the office?  
B No. I work / I'm working at home today.
- 2 A Do you do / Are you doing your homework?  
B I don't have any homework today. I play / I'm playing a video game.
- 3 My wife is a nurse. She works / She's working in a children's hospital.
- 4 We're on vacation in Brazil. We stay / We're staying in a nice little hotel.
- 5 A Hi. Can you talk or are you driving / do you drive?  
B I don't drive / I'm not driving, but I can't talk now. I have / I'm having lunch with my boss.
- 6 It always rains / is raining a lot here in the winter.
- 7 I usually have / am having toast for breakfast, but today I have / I'm having cereal.

- b Complete the sentences with the verb in (parentheses). Use the simple present or present continuous.

Do you usually walk to work? (walk)

- 1 Oh no! It \_\_\_\_\_ and I don't have my umbrella. (rain)
- 2 My father and I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner together every week. (have)
- 3 Maya and Jack are on vacation this week. They \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada. (ski)
- 4 A Hi, Sam. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the basketball game on TV? (watch)  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_ my Spanish homework. (do)
- 5 I always \_\_\_\_\_ late, and I never \_\_\_\_\_ time for breakfast. (get up, have)
- 6 My sister \_\_\_\_\_ in Thailand right now. (travel)
- 7 A What time \_\_\_\_\_ you usually \_\_\_\_\_ to bed? (go)  
B At about 11:30.
- 8 Look. That's my brother over there. Can you see him? He \_\_\_\_\_ a blue hat. (wear)
- 9 A Hello, Nick. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? (go)  
B To the gym. I always \_\_\_\_\_ on Tuesdays. (go)

← p.57

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

### 10A there's a... / there are some...

10.6 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Singular	Plural
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>There's</b> a TV in the room. ( <i>there's = there is</i> ) <b>There's</b> a shower.	<b>There are</b> two beds in the room. <b>There are some</b> pictures.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>There isn't</b> a phone. <b>There isn't</b> a bathtub.	<b>There aren't any</b> towels. <b>There aren't any</b> books.
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Is there</b> a TV?	<b>Are there any</b> pictures?
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes, <b>there is</b> .	Yes, <b>there are</b> .
<input type="checkbox"/> <b>Is there</b> a bathtub?	<b>Are there any</b> towels?
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, <b>there isn't</b> .	No, <b>there aren't</b> .



- We use *there is / there are* to say that something or somebody is in a place.  
*There's a TV in my hotel room. = The room has a TV.*

#### Word order

**There's** a swimming pool.

**Is there** a swimming pool?

#### some and any

*There are some towels in the bathroom.*

*There aren't any towels in the bathroom.*

*Are there any towels in the bathroom?*

- Use *some* with plural nouns in  sentences. *some* = you don't say exactly how many.
- Use *any* with plural nouns in  sentences and .

### 10B simple past: be

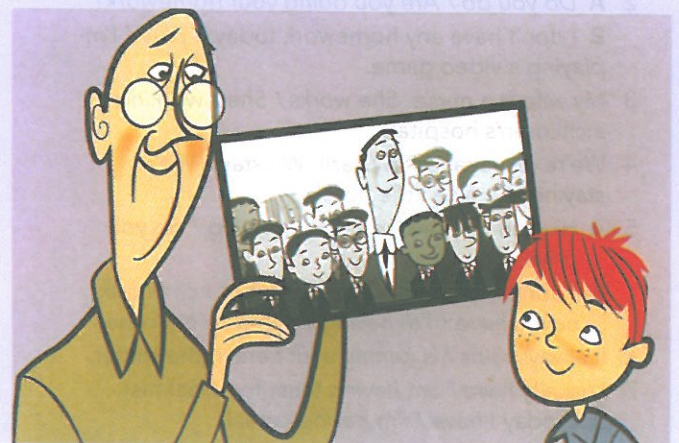
10.12 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<b>I was</b> at home at 8:00.	<b>I wasn't</b> at home at 8:00. ( <i>wasn't = was not</i> )	<b>Were you</b> late?	Yes, <b>I was</b> .	No, <b>I wasn't</b> .
<b>You were</b> in class yesterday.	<b>You weren't</b> in class yesterday. ( <i>weren't = were not</i> )	<b>Was she</b> a singer?	Yes, <b>she was</b> .	No, <b>she wasn't</b> .
<b>He was</b> tired last night.	<b>He wasn't</b> tired last night.	<b>Were they</b> in Mexico last week?	Yes, <b>they were</b> .	No, <b>they weren't</b> .
<b>It was</b> hot last week.	<b>It wasn't</b> hot last week.			
<b>We were</b> in Seoul last month.	<b>We weren't</b> in Seoul last month.			
<b>You were</b> late this morning.	<b>You weren't</b> late this morning.			
<b>They were</b> famous in the 60s.	<b>They weren't</b> famous in the 60s.			

- We use *was / were* to talk about the past.
- Present to past:  
*am / is* → *was*, *are* → *were*  
*He is at home today.*  
*He was at home yesterday.*
- The past of *there is* = *there was*, and the past of *there are* = *there were*.  
*There was a party at the school last night.*

#### Past time expressions

You can use the simple past with these time expressions:  
**this morning, yesterday, last night, last week, last month, last year**  
*He was late for work this morning.*  
*She wasn't in class last week.*



I was a teacher.

## 10A

a Complete with the correct form of *there's / there are, Is there / Are there, or there isn't / there aren't*.

*There aren't* any pictures on the walls.

- \_\_\_\_\_ any free tables in the restaurant?
- \_\_\_\_\_ any elevators. Would you like rooms on the first floor?
- \_\_\_\_\_ a bathtub in the bathroom. It's very big.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a gym? I want to exercise.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a remote control for the TV. Can you ask reception for one?
- \_\_\_\_\_ some very ugly pictures in this room.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting room in the hotel?
- \_\_\_\_\_ some tables in the yard if you want to eat outside.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a parking lot, but we can help you park your car.
- \_\_\_\_\_ any clean towels?

b Complete with *a, some, or any*.

Are there *any* rooms in the hotel?

- There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ cars in the parking lot.
- There are \_\_\_\_\_ pillows in the closet.
- There's \_\_\_\_\_ pool in the spa.
- Are there \_\_\_\_\_ chairs in the yard?
- Is there \_\_\_\_\_ TV in the spa?
- There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ table in the bedroom.
- There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ windows in my room.
- There are \_\_\_\_\_ stores in the hotel.
- There are \_\_\_\_\_ nice T-shirts in the gift shop.
- Are there \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants in town?

➔ p.60

## 10B

a Write sentences or questions with *was* and *were*.

We

*We weren't* at home last night.

- you
- \_\_\_\_\_ at school yesterday?
- Thanh
- \_\_\_\_\_ very well yesterday.
- We
- \_\_\_\_\_ on the plane at 4:00.
- they
- \_\_\_\_\_ in class yesterday?
- You
- \_\_\_\_\_ very hungry this morning.
- I
- \_\_\_\_\_ in a meeting until 7:00 last night.
- your sister
- \_\_\_\_\_ in Toronto last week?
- It
- \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible movie
- I
- \_\_\_\_\_ at home last weekend.
- Sarah and Emma
- \_\_\_\_\_ tired this morning.

b Complete the conversations with *was, wasn't, were, or weren't*.

- A Where *were* you last night?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ at work all evening.  
A No, you \_\_\_\_\_. You \_\_\_\_\_ with Elena!  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_!
- A \_\_\_\_\_ Freddie Mercury an actor?  
B No, he \_\_\_\_\_. He \_\_\_\_\_ a singer with Queen.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ you in San Diego yesterday?  
B No, we \_\_\_\_\_. We \_\_\_\_\_ in Los Angeles.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ the movie good?  
B No, it \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ very slow!

➔ p.62

### 11A simple past: regular verbs

11.3 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

+	-	?	✓	✗
I <b>arrived</b> at the airport at 7:00.	I <b>didn't arrive</b> at the airport at 7:00.	Did you <b>watch</b> TV yesterday?	Yes, I <b>did</b> .	No, I <b>didn't</b> .
You <b>finished</b> the book.	You <b>didn't finish</b> the book.	Did she <b>walk</b> to work?	Yes, she <b>did</b> .	No, she <b>didn't</b> .
He <b>wanted</b> a coffee.	He <b>didn't want</b> a coffee.	Did they <b>play</b> tennis?	Yes, they <b>did</b> .	No, they <b>didn't</b> .
She <b>liked</b> the movie.	She <b>didn't like</b> the movie.			
It <b>rained</b> yesterday.	It <b>didn't rain</b> yesterday.			
We <b>studied</b> Spanish at school.	We <b>didn't study</b> Spanish at school.			
They <b>stopped</b> at a café.	They <b>didn't stop</b> at a café.			

- We use the simple past to talk about the past.
- The simple past is the same for all persons, e.g., *I arrived, he arrived, they arrived*, etc.
- We use *did* (not *do* / *does*) to make questions and negatives in the simple past.
- ☐ = *I didn't arrive at the airport.* **NOT** ~~*I didn't arrived*~~
- ❓ = *Did you watch TV...?* **NOT** ~~*Did you watched*~~

#### Spelling rules for regular verbs

work	worked	verb + -ed
finish	finished	
live	lived	verb ending in e + -d
change	changed	
cry	cried	verbs with final consonant + y = y + -ied
study	studied	
stop	stopped	verbs that end consonant-vowel-consonant double final consonant + -ed
prefer	preferred	

### 11B simple past irregular verbs: get, go, have, do

11.13 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

+	-
I <b>got up</b> late yesterday.	I <b>didn't get up</b> late yesterday.
He <b>went</b> to work by car.	He <b>didn't go</b> to work by car.
She <b>had</b> eggs for breakfast.	She <b>didn't have</b> eggs for breakfast.
We <b>did</b> yoga yesterday.	We <b>didn't do</b> yoga yesterday.
They <b>did</b> their homework last night.	They <b>didn't do</b> their homework last night.

?	✓	✗	?	✓
Did you <b>get up</b> late yesterday?	Yes, I <b>did</b> .	No, I <b>didn't</b> .	What time did you <b>get up</b> ?	At eight o'clock.
Did he <b>go</b> to work by car yesterday?	Yes, he <b>did</b> .	No, he <b>didn't</b> .	Where did you <b>go</b> on Saturday?	We <b>went</b> to the beach.
Did they <b>do</b> their homework last night?	Yes, they <b>did</b> .	No, they <b>didn't</b> .	Where did you <b>have</b> lunch?	At school.
			What did you <b>do</b> last night?	We <b>had</b> dinner with friends.

- get, go, have, and do* are irregular verbs in the past tense.
- Present to past**

+

*I get up early.* → *I got up early.*  
*I go to school.* → *I went to school.*  
*I have breakfast.* → *I had breakfast.*  
*I do my homework.* → *I did my homework.*

-

*I don't get up early.* → *I didn't get up early.*  
*I don't go to school.* → *I didn't go to school.*  
**NOT** ~~*I didn't got up early.* / *I didn't went to school.*~~ etc.

?

Do you **have** breakfast? → Did you **have** breakfast?  
Do you **do** your homework? → Did you **do** your homework?  
**NOT** ~~*Did you had breakfast?* / *Did you did your homework?*~~ etc.

- Remember word order in questions:  
auxiliary, subject, base form of verb: *Did you get up early?*  
question word, auxiliary, subject, base form of verb:  
*What time did you get up?*

#### did / didn't

We use *did* / *didn't* to make questions and negatives in the past, e.g.,

*Did you go to class?*

*I didn't have breakfast this morning.*

Here, *did* / *didn't* = an auxiliary verb.

But *did* can also be a normal verb, e.g., *I did my homework on the weekend.*

## 11A

### a Write the sentences in the simple past.

- He watches a lot of TV. He watched a lot of TV.
- They work in a bank. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He finishes work late. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We live in Brazil. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I carry a big bag. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She walks to work. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The train stops in Chicago. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We play tennis. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You talk a lot! \_\_\_\_\_
  - I relax on the weekend. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He waits for the bus. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She prefers the red car. \_\_\_\_\_
  - She needs a new coat. \_\_\_\_\_

### b Complete the conversations with the verb in (parentheses) in the simple past (+, -, or ?).

- (play) A Did you play golf last weekend?  
B Yes, I played on Saturday.
- 1 (park) A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the car?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ it near the restaurant.
- 2 (finish) A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ your homework?  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_ it. It was very difficult.
- 3 (study) A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in college?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ economics.
- 4 (like) A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the concert?  
B No, I \_\_\_\_\_ it very much. The singers were terrible.
- 5 (watch) A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ TV last night?  
B Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_ a very good show.
- 6 (close) A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the door when you went out?  
B Of course I \_\_\_\_\_ it!
- 7 (cry) A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the movie?  
B Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot!
- 8 (arrive) A What time \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in Tokyo?  
B We \_\_\_\_\_ very late, about 1:00 a.m.

← p.66

## 11B

### a Change from present to past. Use the time expression in the answer.

- I don't go to the gym.  
I didn't go to the gym yesterday.
- I have eggs for breakfast.  
\_\_\_\_\_ this morning.
  - Does she go to Spanish classes?  
\_\_\_\_\_ last year?
  - We don't have lunch at home.  
\_\_\_\_\_ last week.
  - Mike doesn't go to work by car.  
\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
  - They go to school by bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
  - What time do you get up?  
\_\_\_\_\_ this morning?
  - Do you play sports or exercise?  
\_\_\_\_\_ last weekend?
  - You don't do the housework.  
\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
  - I don't get up early.  
\_\_\_\_\_ this morning.

### b Complete with the verb in (parentheses) in the past simple (+, -, or ?).

- (go) A Did you go to bed early last night?  
B Yes, I did. I went to bed at 9:30!
- 1 (have) A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch today?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ fish.
- 2 (do) A \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the housework?  
B No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ my English homework.
- 3 (go) A Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ last night?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ out. I stayed at home.
- 4 (get up) A What time \_\_\_\_\_ the children \_\_\_\_\_?  
B They \_\_\_\_\_ very late. They were tired.
- 5 (have) A What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast?  
B I \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast. I wasn't hungry. I just \_\_\_\_\_ a coffee.
- 6 (go) A \_\_\_\_\_ Pedro \_\_\_\_\_ to judo last week?  
B He \_\_\_\_\_ on Monday, but he \_\_\_\_\_ on Wednesday because he wasn't feeling well.

← p.68



### 12A simple past: regular and irregular verbs

12.6 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

be

I <b>was</b> at home last night.	I <b>wasn't</b> at home last night.
You <b>were</b> very late.	You <b>weren't</b> very late.
He <b>was</b> a teacher.	He <b>wasn't</b> a teacher.
She <b>was</b> in bed at 10:00.	She <b>wasn't</b> in bed at 10:00.
It <b>was</b> cold yesterday.	It <b>wasn't</b> cold yesterday.
You <b>were</b> tired last night.	You <b>weren't</b> tired last night.
We <b>were</b> in Spain in May.	We <b>weren't</b> in Spain in May.
They <b>were</b> nice rooms.	They <b>weren't</b> nice rooms.
<b>Was</b> she tired?	Yes, she <b>was</b> .
<b>Were</b> they at school?	No, they <b>weren't</b> .
Where <b>were</b> you at 8:00 this morning?	I <b>was</b> on the bus.

- was / were is the past of am / is / are.
- To make questions change the order:

**She was** at home.

**Was she** at home?

12.7 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Regular verbs

I <b>played</b> tennis yesterday.	I <b>didn't play</b> tennis yesterday.
They <b>worked</b> all weekend.	They <b>didn't work</b> all weekend.
<b>Did you like</b> the movie?	Yes, I <b>did</b> . No, I <b>didn't</b> .
Where <b>did they stay</b> in New York?	They <b>stayed</b> in a hotel on Fifth Avenue.

- For regular verbs add -ed or -d to the base form to make the simple past.

12.8 Listen and repeat the examples. Then read the rules.

Irregular verbs

I <b>got up</b> late yesterday.	I <b>didn't get up</b> late yesterday.
They <b>had</b> lunch at a restaurant.	They <b>didn't have</b> lunch at a restaurant.
<b>Did you go</b> on vacation last summer?	Yes, I <b>did</b> . No, I <b>didn't</b> .
Where <b>did you go</b> on vacation?	We <b>went</b> to Brazil.

- Some verbs are irregular in the simple past, e.g., go → went.
- To make negatives of regular and irregular verbs, we use *didn't* + the base form, e.g., *I didn't like the movie. They didn't go to class.*
- To make questions with regular and irregular verbs, we use *Did* + person + the base form, e.g., *Did you like the movie? Did they go to class?*
- Remember word order in questions:  
auxiliary, subject, base form: *Did she want to come?*  
question word, auxiliary, subject, base form: *What time did they get up?*
- There is a list of regular and irregular verbs on p.133.

Complete the story with the verbs in (parentheses) in the simple past (+, -, or ?).

Last summer my family and I went (go) to Colorado for a vacation. We <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (rent) a house in Glenwood Springs, in the western part of Colorado, about 150 miles from Denver. The weather <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) fantastic, hot and sunny during the day, but cold at night. We <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (do) different things every day. Sometimes we <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Vail or Aspen and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) parks and art galleries. On other days we <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in the house. It <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a swimming pool in the yard, so the children <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) happy. One afternoon an old woman <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the door.

"Good afternoon," she <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (say). "I'm your neighbor. Are your children at home?"

"Yes," I <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (answer). "I think so. Why?"

"Because about an hour ago I <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a small boy near town. I think he was your son."

I <sup>13</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (look) out of the window. My daughter <sup>14</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the swimming pool, but my son <sup>15</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not be) there.

"Where <sup>16</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him?"

I <sup>17</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (ask). "18 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to him?"

"He was on the road to town, but I <sup>19</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not speak) to him," the old woman <sup>20</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (say).

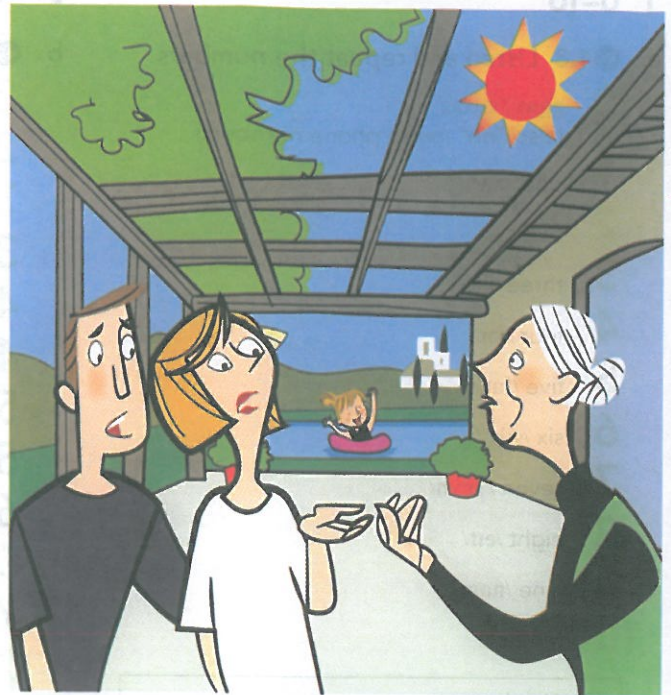
"Come on," I <sup>21</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) my husband. "We need to go to town."

The old woman <sup>22</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) at the house with my daughter and we <sup>23</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to town.

My son <sup>24</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) outside a café. He <sup>25</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a big ice-cream cone in his hand.

"Why <sup>26</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the house?" I asked him. "We <sup>27</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really worried."

"I <sup>28</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (want) an ice-cream cone," he said.



← p.73

# Numbers

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 0-10

a 1.8 Listen and repeat the numbers.

- 0 zero /'zi:rou/  
(also "oh" /ou/ in phone numbers)
- 1 one /wʌn/
- 2 two /tu/
- 3 three /θri/
- 4 four /fɔː/
- 5 five /faɪv/
- 6 six /sɪks/
- 7 seven /'sevn/
- 8 eight /eɪt/
- 9 nine /naɪn/
- 10 ten /tɛn/

Word stress  
zero = **zero**    seven = **seven**

b Cover the words. Say the numbers.

ACTIVATION Count from 0-10 and from 10-0.

← p.7

### 2 11-100

#### 11-20

a 2.21 Listen and repeat the numbers.

- 11 eleven /ɪ'levn/
- 12 twelve /twelv/
- 13 thirteen /θɜː'tɪn/
- 14 fourteen /fɔː'tɪn/
- 15 fifteen /fɪf'tɪn/
- 16 sixteen /sɪks'tɪn/
- 17 seventeen /sev'n'tɪn/
- 18 eighteen /eɪ'tɪn/
- 19 nineteen /naɪn'tɪn/
- 20 twenty /'twenti/

#### 21-100

b 2.22 Listen and repeat the numbers.

- 21 twenty-one /'twɛnti 'wʌn/
- 22 twenty-two /'twɛnti 'tu/
- 30 thirty /'θɜːti/
- 33 thirty-three /θɜːti 'θri/
- 40 forty /'fɔːti/
- 44 forty-four /fɔːti 'fɔː/
- 50 fifty /'fɪfti/
- 55 fifty-five /fɪfti 'faɪv/
- 60 sixty /'sɪksti/
- 66 sixty-six /sɪksti 'sɪks/
- 70 seventy /'sevnti/
- 77 seventy-seven /sevnti 'sevn/
- 80 eighty /'eɪti/
- 88 eighty-eight /eɪti 'eɪt/
- 90 ninety /'naɪnti/
- 99 ninety-nine /naɪnti 'naɪn/
- 100 a / one hundred /ə 'hʌndrəd/ /wʌn 'hʌndrəd/

Word stress – be careful!  
30 **thirty** 13 **thirteen** 40 **forty** 14 **fourteen**, etc.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

← p.15



# Countries and nationalities

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 COUNTRIES

a 1.18 Listen and repeat the countries.



- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1 Argentina /ɑrdʒən'ti:nə/ | 9 Mexico /'meksɪkəʊ/                                |
| 2 Brazil /brə'zɪl/         | 10 Peru /pə'ru/                                     |
| 3 Canada /'kænədə/         | 11 Saudi Arabia /'saʊdi ə'reɪbiə/                   |
| 4 Chile /'tʃɪli/           | 12 Spain /speɪn/                                    |
| 5 China /'tʃaɪnə/          | 13 Turkey /'tɜrki/                                  |
| 6 England /'ɪŋɡlənd/       | 14 the United States (the US) /ðə yu'naitəd steɪts/ |
| 7 Japan /dʒə'pæn/          | 15 Vietnam /viət'nəm/                               |
| 8 Korea /kə'riə/           |   |

🔍 CAPITAL letters  
Brazil **NOT** brazzil.

b Write your country: \_\_\_\_\_. Practice saying it.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the countries.

🔍 p.8

### 2 NATIONALITIES

a 2.1 Listen and repeat the countries and nationalities.

	Country	Nationality
	Argentina	Argentinian /ɑrdʒən'tɪniən/
	Brazil	Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/
	Canada	Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/
	Chile	Chilean /tʃɪ'leɪən/
	China	Chinese /tʃaɪ'nɪz/
	England	English /'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/
	Japan	Japanese /dʒə'pə'nɪz/
	Korea	Korean /kə'riən/
	Mexico	Mexican /'meksɪkən/
	Peru	Peruvian /pə'ruviən/
	Saudi Arabia	Saudi /'saʊdi/
	Spain	Spanish /'spæɪnɪʃ/
	Turkey	Turkish /'tɜrkiʃ/
	the United Kingdom	British /'brɪtɪʃ/
	the United States	American /ə'merɪkən/
	Vietnam	Vietnamese /viət'nə'mɪz/

#### 🔍 Word stress

For most countries, the word stress is the same on the country and the nationality, e.g., *Brazil*, *Brazilian*.

Sometimes it's different:

*Canada* → *Canadian*    *China* → *Chinese*

*Japan* → *Japanese*    *Vietnam* → *Vietnamese*

b Write your nationality: \_\_\_\_\_. Practice saying it.

c Read about countries and languages. What's the language in your country?

#### 🔍 Countries and languages

The word for a language is sometimes the same as the nationality.

**England:** nationality *English*, language *English*

Some are different, e.g.,

**Canada:** nationality *Canadian*, language *English*

**Saudi Arabia:** nationality *Saudi*, language *Arabic*

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Look at the flags.

Say the countries and nationalities.

🔍 p.12

🔍 Go online to review the vocabulary for each lesson

# The classroom

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 THINGS IN THE CLASSROOM

a 1.38 Listen and repeat the words.

- 1 the board /bɔːd/
- 2 the door /dɔː/
- 3 a window /'wɪndəʊ/
- 4 a chair /tʃeə/
- 5 a coat /kəʊt/
- 6 a table /'teɪbl/
- 7 a laptop /'læptɒp/
- 8 a dictionary /'dɪkʃənəri/
- 9 a piece of paper /piː əv 'peɪpə/
- 10 a pen /pen/
- 11 a bag /bæg/

b Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the things.

ACTIVATION In pairs, point to things in the classroom. Your partner says the word.

What is it? (It's the board.)  
How do you spell it? (B-O-A-R-D.)



### 2 CLASSROOM LANGUAGE

1.39 Listen and repeat the phrases.

The teacher says...



1 Look at the board, please.



4 Close your books.

You say...



7 How do you spell it?



10 I don't understand.



2 Open your books.



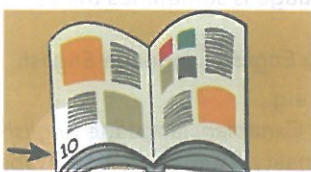
5 Stand up, please.



8 Sorry? Can you repeat that, please?



11 I don't know.



3 Go to page 10.



6 Sit down.



9 Excuse me. What's gracias in English?



12 Sorry I'm late.

ACTIVATION Cover the phrases. Look at the pictures. Say the phrases.



**a** 3.1 Listen and repeat the words.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 a cell phone /sɛl foun/      | 9 a (phone) <u>charger</u> /'tʃɑ:dʒər/ |
| 2 a watch /wɒtʃ/               | 10 an <u>ID</u> card /aɪ 'di kɑ:d/     |
| 3 a <u>tablet</u> /'tæblət/    | a <u>passport</u> /'pæspɔ:rt/          |
| 4 a <u>wallet</u> /'wɒlət/     | 11 an <u>umbrella</u> /ʌm'brɛlə/       |
| a change purse /tʃeɪndʒ pɜ:s/  | 12 a <u>camera</u> /'kæmərə/           |
| 5 a <u>pencil</u> /'pensl/     | 13 a <u>credit card</u> /'kredət kɑ:d/ |
| 6 a <u>notebook</u> /'nəʊtbuk/ | a <u>debit card</u> /'debət kɑ:d/      |
| 7 <u>glasses</u> /'glæsəz/     | 14 a <u>key</u> /ki/                   |
| 8 a <u>photo</u> /'fəʊtəʊ/     | 15 a <u>newspaper</u> /'nju:zpeɪpər/   |

a / an  
 a bag, a key  
 an ID card, an umbrella  
 ph  
 ph = /f/, e.g., **phone**, **photo**

**b** Cover the words. Look at the photo. Say the things.

**p.18**

**Go online** to review the vocabulary for each lesson

# People and family

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 PEOPLE

a 4.2 Listen and repeat the words.



- 1 a boy /bɔɪ/
- 2 a girl /gɜːl/
- 3 a man /mæn/
- 4 a woman /'wʊmən/
- 5 children /'tʃɪldrən/
- 6 friends /'frendz/

b 4.3 Listen and repeat the irregular plurals.

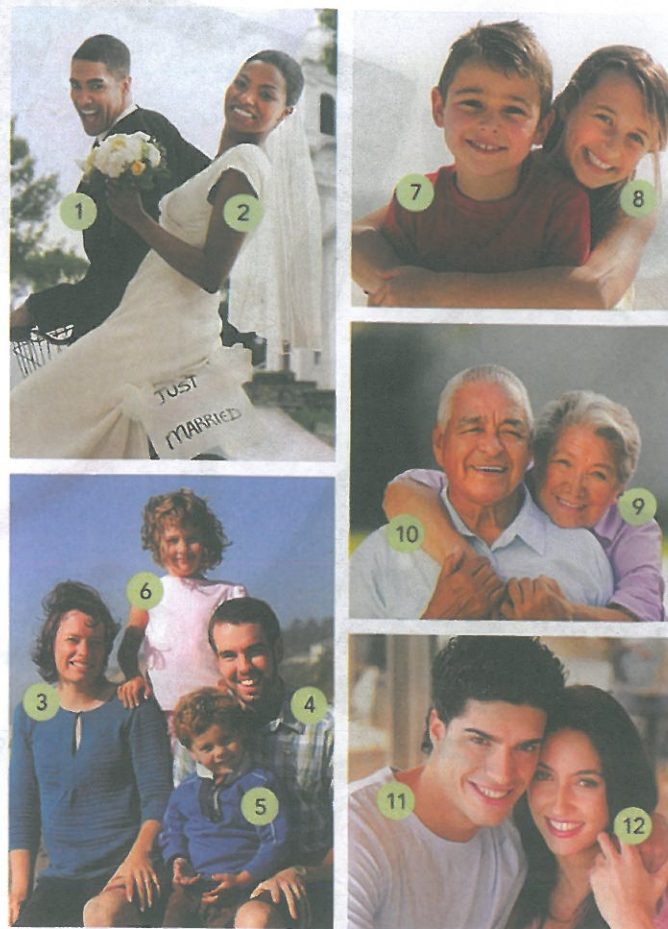
Irregular plurals	
Singular	Plural
a child	children
a man	men
a woman	women
a person	people

**ACTIVATION** Look at the photos in a. Say the words in singular and plural.

( a boy boys

### 2 FAMILY

4.4 Listen and repeat the words.



- 1 husband /'hʌzbənd/
- 2 wife /waɪf/
- 3 mother /'mʌðər/
- 4 father /'fɑːðər/
- 5 son /sʌn/
- 6 daughter /'dɔːtər/
- 7 brother /'brʌðər/
- 8 sister /'sɪstər/
- 9 grandmother /'grænmlðər/
- 10 grandfather /'grænfɑːðər/
- 11 boyfriend /'bɔɪfrend/
- 12 girlfriend /'gɜːlfrend/

**parents**  
 mother + father = parents /'perənts/ **NOT** fathers  
 grandmother + grandfather =  
 grandparents /'grænpərənts/

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the family members.

← p.24

# Adjectives

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 COLORS

4.16 Listen and repeat the words.



black /blæk/



blue /blu:/



brown /braʊn/



green /grɪn/



gray /greɪ/



orange /'ɒrɪndʒ/



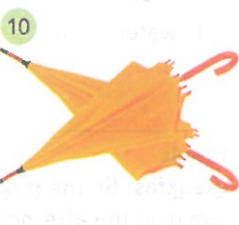
pink /pɪŋk/



red /red/



white /waɪt/



yellow /'jeləʊ/

**ACTIVATION** Cover the words. Look at the photos. Ask and answer.

What color is it? (It's black.)

What color are they? (They're blue.)

### 2 COMMON ADJECTIVES

a 4.17 Listen and repeat the words.



big /bɪg/



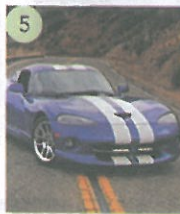
small /smɔːl/



old /əʊld/



new /nu:/



fast /fæst/



slow /sləʊ/



beautiful  
/'byutəfʊl/



ugly /'ʌɡli/



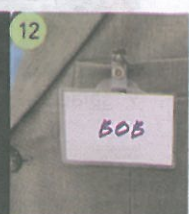
cheap /tʃi:p/



expensive  
/'ɛkspensɪv/



long /lɒŋ/



short /ʃɔːt/



clean /kli:n/



dirty /'dɜːti/



easy /'iːzi/



difficult  
/'dɪfɪkəlt/

b Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the adjectives.

**ACTIVATION** Test a partner.

What's the opposite of new? (Old. What's the opposite of \_\_\_\_\_?)

d 4.18 Listen and repeat the positive and negative adjectives.

Positive and negative adjectives

✓ = good    ✓✓ = very good    ✓✓✓ = great / fantastic

x = bad    xx = very bad    xxx = awful / terrible

very

You can use **very** before adjectives, e.g., A Ferrari is **very expensive**. It's a **very fast** car.



# Food and drink

## VOCABULARY BANK

a 5.2 Listen and repeat the words.

### Food



1 fish /fiʃ/



2 meat /mit/



3 pasta /'pɑ:stə/



4 rice /raɪs/



5 eggs /egz/



6 yogurt /'jɒɡət/



7 vegetables /'vedʒtəblz/



8 potatoes /pə'teɪtəʊz/



9 salad /'sæləd/



10 fruit /frut/



11 bread /bred/



12 butter /'bʌtər/



13 cheese /tʃi:z/



14 sugar /'ʃʊɡər/



15 a sandwich /'sænwrɪʃ/



16 cereal /'sɪəriəl/



17 chocolate /'tʃɒklət/

### Drinks



18 coffee /'kɒfi/



19 tea /ti/



20 milk /mɪlk/



21 water /'wɔ:tər/



22 orange juice  
/'ɔ:ɪndʒ dʒʊ:s/

b 5.3 Listen and repeat the words and phrases in the box.

ACTIVATION Cover the words in a. Look at the photos.  
Say the words.

p.30

### Meals

breakfast (in the morning)  
lunch (in the afternoon)  
dinner (in the evening)

Verbs: *have, eat, drink*  
I **have** breakfast at 8:00.  
I **have** cereal and coffee.  
I **eat** a lot of fruit.  
I **drink** tea with milk.

eat



drink



# Common verb phrases 1

## VOCABULARY BANK

a 5.13 Listen and repeat the phrases.



1 **live** in an apartment /lɪv ɪn ən ə'pɑ:tmənt/



2 **have** breakfast (lunch / dinner) /hæv 'brekfəst/ (lʌntʃ / 'dɪnə)



3 **watch** TV /wɑ:tʃ ti 'vi/



4 **listen** to the radio /lɪsn tə ðə 'reɪdiəʊ/



5 **read** the newspaper /ri:d ðə 'nju:zpeɪpə/



6 **eat** fast food /it fæst fud/



7 **drink** coffee /drɪŋk 'kɒfi/



8 **speak** English /spi:k 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ/



9 **want** a coffee /want ə 'kafi/



10 **have** a dog /hæv ə dɒg/



11 **like** cats /laɪk kɑ:ts/



12 **work** in a bank /wɜ:k ɪn ə bæŋk/



13 **study** Spanish /'stʌdi 'spæniʃ/



14 **go** to English classes /gəʊ tə 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 'klæsɪz/



15 **need** a new car /ni:d ə nu kɑ:/

b 5.14 Cover the phrases. Listen and say the phrase.

1 ) in an apartment (live in an apartment

ACTIVATION Ask and answer with a partner in a different order.

Do you drink coffee? (Yes, I do. (No, I don't.

← p.33

Go online to review the vocabulary for each lesson

# Jobs and places of work

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 WHAT DO THEY DO?

a 6.1 Listen and repeat the words.



1 a teacher /'titʃər/



2 a doctor /'dɒktər/



3 a nurse /nɜːs/



4 a journalist /'dʒɜːnəlɪst/



5 a waiter /'weɪtər/ a waitress /'weɪtrəs/



6 a salesperson /'seɪlzpɜːsn/



7 a receptionist /rɪ'seɪpʃənɪst/



8 a policeman /pə'lɪsmən/ a policewoman /pə'lɪswumən/



9 a factory worker /'fæktəri 'wɜːkər/



10 a taxi driver /'tæksi 'draɪvər/

b Cover the words. Ask and answer in pairs.

What does she do? (She's a teacher.)

What does he do? (He's a...)

c 6.2 Listen and repeat the sentences.

I work for an American company. /'kʌmpəni/

I'm in college. /'kɒlɪdʒ/

I'm a student. /'studnt/

I study economics. /ɪkə'nɒmɪks/

I'm at school.

I'm unemployed right now. /ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/

I'm retired. /rɪ'taɪəd/

d What do you do?

\_\_\_\_\_

### 2 WHERE DO THEY WORK?

a 6.3 Listen and repeat the phrases.



1 in a hospital /'hɒspɪtl/



2 in a store /stɔː/



3 in a restaurant /'restɹənt/



4 in an office /'ɒfɪs/



5 in a school /skuːl/



6 in a factory /'fæktəri/



7 at home /həʊm/



8 on the street /striːt/

b Cover the phrases. Look at the photos. Say the phrases.

c Ask and answer with a partner.

Where does a doctor work? (In a hospital.)

d Where do you work or study?

\_\_\_\_\_

← p.36

# A typical day

## VOCABULARY BANK

a 6.14 Listen and repeat the phrases.

### IN THE MORNING



get up /gɛt ʌp/



have breakfast /hæv 'brekfəst/



take a shower /teɪk ə 'ʃaʊə/



go to work /gəʊ tə wɜ:k/ (by bus, train, car, etc.)



have a coffee /hæv ə 'kafi/

### IN THE AFTERNOON



have lunch /hæv lʌntʃ/



finish work /'fɪnɪʃ wɜ:k/



go home /gəʊ hoʊm/



go shopping /gəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/



go to the gym /gəʊ tə ðə dʒɪm/

### IN THE EVENING



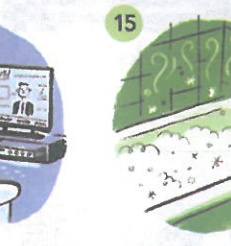
make dinner /meɪk 'dɪnə/



have dinner /hæv 'dɪnə/



do housework /du 'haʊswɜ:k/



watch TV /wɒtʃ ti 'vi/



take a bath /teɪk ə bæθ/



go to bed /gəʊ tə bed/

make and do  
**make** dinner / coffee **BUT do** housework,  
**do** homework

go with to and the  
go **to** the gym, go **to** the movies  
go **to** work, go **to** school, go **to** bed  
go home **NOT** go to home

b 6.15 Listen and point to the picture.

1) Lisa has lunch at one o'clock. (Picture six.)

ACTIVATION In pairs, describe Lisa's day. Say the times where there are clocks.

(She gets up at a quarter to seven.) (She has breakfast.)

← p.38

Go online to review the vocabulary for each lesson

# Common verb phrases 2

## VOCABULARY BANK

### 1 FREE TIME

a 7.4 Listen and repeat the verbs and verb phrases.



1 **go out** /gou aʊt/  
(at night)



2 **play computer games**  
/plei kəm'pyutər geɪmz/



3 **exercise** /'eksəsaɪz/



4 **go to the beach** /gou tə ðə bi:tʃ/  
(the movies, the theater, etc.)



5 **stay at home**  
/steɪ ət hoʊm/



6 **play tennis**  
/plei 'tenɪs/



7 **hike** /haɪk/  
(in the mountains)



8 **play the piano**  
/pleɪ ðə pi'ænəʊ/



9 **swim** /swɪm/



10 **meet friends**  
/mi:t frendz/



11 **relax** /ri'læks/



12 **travel** /'trævl/

meet



meet a person  
for the first time



meet at the  
train station



meet friends  
after work

b Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the verbs or phrases.

ACTIVATION Work in pairs. Make true sentences with *sometimes* or *never*.

(I sometimes go to the movies.) (I never play computer games.)

p.42

### 2 TRAVELING

9.5 Listen and repeat the verb phrases.



1 **book tickets**  
/buk 'tɪkəts/



2 **pack a suitcase**  
/pæk ə 'sʊtkes/



3 **leave the house**  
/li:v ðə haʊs/



4 **carry a suitcase**  
/'kæri ə 'sʊtkes/



5 **wear sunglasses**  
/weɪ 'sʌŋglæsəz/



6 **get a taxi** (a train, a bus)  
/get ə 'tæksi/



7 **wait for a flight**  
/weɪt fər ə flaɪt/



8 **rent a car** /rent ə kɑːr/



9 **arrive at a hotel** /ə'raɪv  
æt ə hoʊ'tel/ (in a city)



10 **stay in a hotel** /steɪ ɪn ə  
hoʊ'tel/



11 **call home**  
/kɔ:l hoʊm/



12 **buy presents**  
/baɪ 'preznts/

ACTIVATION Cover the verb phrases. Look at the photos. Work in pairs. Ask *What's she doing? What's he doing? What are they doing?*

p.55

### 1 MONTHS

a 7.21 Listen and repeat the months.

<b>JAN</b>	January /'dʒænyuəri/
<b>FEB</b>	February /'febyuəri/
<b>MAR</b>	March /mɑ:tʃ/
<b>APR</b>	April /'eɪprəl/
<b>MAY</b>	May /meɪ/
<b>JUN</b>	June /dʒun/
<b>JUL</b>	July /dʒu'laɪ/
<b>AUG</b>	August /'ɔ:gəst/
<b>SEP</b>	September /sep'tembər/
<b>OCT</b>	October /ək'təʊbər/
<b>NOV</b>	November /nou'vembər/
<b>DEC</b>	December /di'sembər/

Months begin with a CAPITAL letter.  
January **NOT** january

ACTIVATION Cover the months and look at JAN, FEB, etc. Say the months. p.46

### 2 ORDINAL NUMBERS

a 7.23 Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers from 1st–20th.

<b>1st</b>	first /fɜ:st/
<b>2nd</b>	second /'sekənd/
<b>3rd</b>	third /θɜ:d/
<b>4th</b>	fourth /fɔ:θ/
<b>5th</b>	fifth /fɪfθ/
<b>6th</b>	sixth /sɪksθ/
<b>7th</b>	seventh /'sevnθ/
<b>8th</b>	eighth /eɪtθ/
<b>9th</b>	ninth /naɪnθ/
<b>10th</b>	tenth /tenθ/
<b>11th</b>	eleventh /'ɪlevnθ/
<b>12th</b>	twelfth /twelfθ/
<b>13th</b>	thirteenth /θɜ:'ti:nθ/
<b>14th</b>	fourteenth /fɔ:'ti:nθ/
<b>15th</b>	fifteenth /fɪf'ti:nθ/
<b>16th</b>	sixteenth /sɪks'ti:nθ/
<b>17th</b>	seventeenth /sevn'ti:nθ/
<b>18th</b>	eighteenth /eɪ'ti:nθ/
<b>19th</b>	nineteenth /naɪn'ti:nθ/
<b>20th</b>	twentieth /'twenti:θ/

b 7.24 Now listen and repeat the ordinal numbers from 21st–31st.

<b>21st</b>	twenty-first /twenti fɜ:st/
<b>22nd</b>	twenty-second /twenti 'sekənd/
<b>23rd</b>	twenty-third /twenti 'θɜ:d/
<b>24th</b>	twenty-fourth /twenti 'fɔ:θ/
<b>25th</b>	twenty-fifth /twenti 'fɪfθ/
<b>26th</b>	twenty-sixth /twenti 'sɪksθ/
<b>27th</b>	twenty-seventh /twenti 'sevnθ/
<b>28th</b>	twenty-eighth /twenti 'eɪtθ/
<b>29th</b>	twenty-ninth /twenti 'naɪnθ/
<b>30th</b>	thirtieth /θɜ:ti:θ/
<b>31st</b>	thirty-first /θɜ:ti 'fɜ:st/

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the numbers (1st, 2nd, etc.). Say the numbers. p.46

Go online to review the vocabulary for each lesson

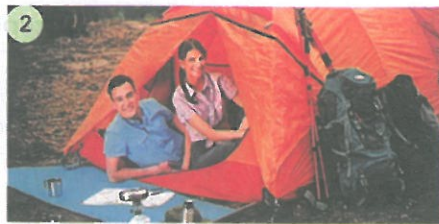
# Activities

# VOCABULARY BANK

8.13 Listen and repeat the words and phrases.



1 buying clothes /'baɪɪŋ kləʊz /



2 camping /'kæmpɪŋ /



3 cooking /'kʊkɪŋ /



4 bike riding /'baɪk raɪdɪŋ /



5 doing yoga /'duɪŋ ju:ɡə /



6 eating out /'i:tɪŋ aʊt /



7 flying /'flaɪɪŋ /



8 going for a walk /'ɡəʊɪŋ fɔː ə wɔːk /



9 going to the movies /'ɡəʊɪŋ tə ðə 'mu:vɪz /



10 painting /'peɪntɪŋ /



11 reading /'riːdɪŋ /



12 running /'rʌnɪŋ /



13 shopping /'ʃɒpɪŋ /



14 singing /'sɪŋɪŋ /



15 sleeping /'sliːpɪŋ /



16 swimming /'swɪmɪŋ /



17 traveling /'trævlɪŋ /



18 watching TV shows /wɒtʃɪŋ ti 'vi:ʃəʊz /

ACTIVATION Cover the activities and look at the photos. Say the activities.

← p.50

a 9.14 Listen and repeat the clothes words.

- 1 sweater /'swetər/
- 2 T-shirt /'ti:ʃərt/
- 3 shirt /ʃərt/
- 4 pants /'pænts/
- 5 jeans /dʒiːnz/
- 6 shorts /ʃɔ:ts/
- 7 suit /su:t/
- 8 dress /dres/
- 9 skirt /skɜ:t/
- 10 coat /kəʊt/
- 11 jacket /'dʒækət/
- 12 socks /sɒks/
- 13 sneakers /'sni:kəz/
- 14 shoes /ʃu:z/
- 15 hat /hæt/
- 16 cap /kæp/



b Cover the words. Look at the photos. Say the words.

ACTIVATION Work in pairs. Ask about other students: *What's he wearing? What's she wearing?*

p.57



Go online to review the vocabulary for each lesson

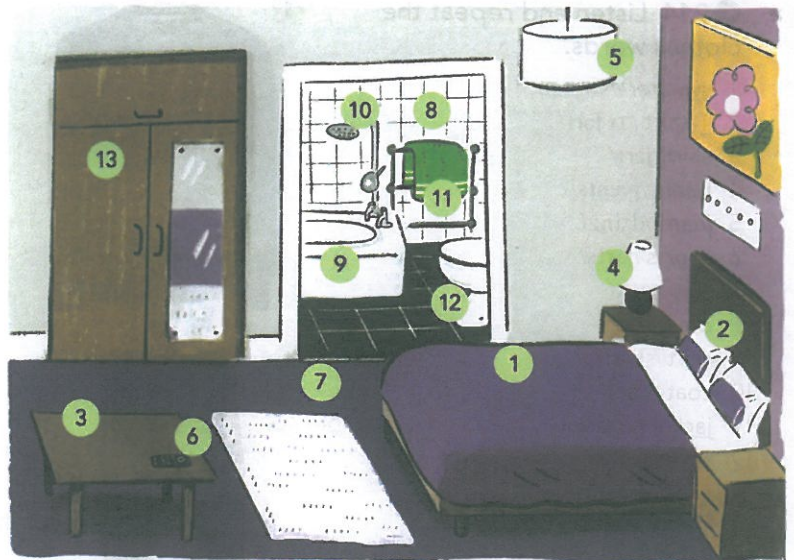


### 1 IN A HOTEL ROOM

a 10.2 Listen and repeat the words.

- 1 a bed /bed/
- 2 a pillow /'pɪləʊ/
- 3 a table /'teɪbl/
- 4 a lamp /læmp/
- 5 a light /laɪt/
- 6 a remote control /rɪ'məʊt kən'trəʊl/
- 7 the floor /flɔːr/
- 8 the bathroom /'bæθrʊm/
- 9 a bathtub /'bæθtʌb/
- 10 a shower /'ʃaʊə/
- 11 a towel /'taʊəl/
- 12 a toilet /'tɔɪlət/
- 13 a closet /'kloʊzət/

b Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the words.



### 2 IN A HOTEL

a 10.3 Listen and repeat the words.

- 1 a swimming pool /'swɪmɪŋ puːl/
- 2 a spa /spa/
- 3 restrooms /'restruːmz/
- 4 a restaurant /'restɹrənt/
- 5 a kitchen /'kɪtʃən/
- 6 a gym /dʒɪm/
- 7 a elevator /'eləveɪtər/
- 8 a gift shop /'gɪft ʃɒp/
- 9 reception /rɪ'sepʃn/
- 10 a yard /jɑːd/
- 11 a parking lot /'pɑːkɪŋ lɒt/

b Cover the words. Look at the picture. Say the words.

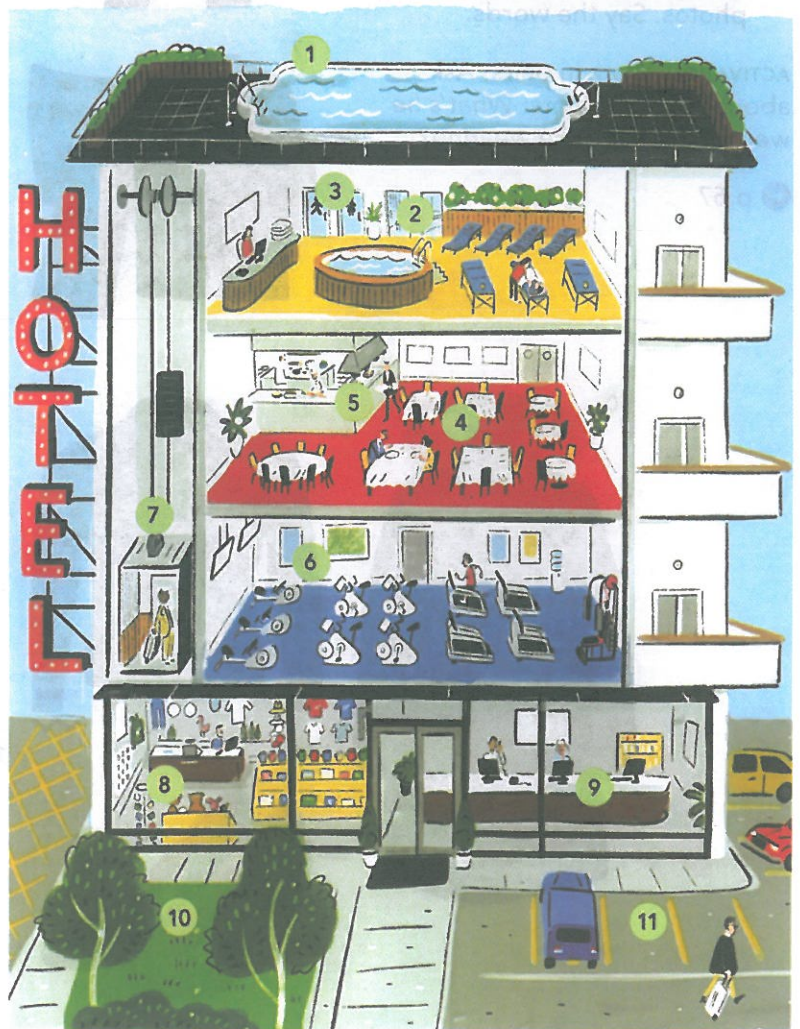
c Practice with a partner. Ask and answer.

Where's the swimming pool?

(It's on the fifth floor.)

first floor  
the floor of a building at street level

← p.60



# Words and phrases to learn

## 1A 1.15

Hello.  
Hi.  
What's your name?  
Nice to meet you.  
A cappuccino, please.  
A tea.  
Yes.  
No.  
OK.  
Thanks.  
Sorry.  
Just a minute.  
Goodbye. / Bye.  
See you on Friday.  
See you tomorrow.

## 1B 1.31

Where are you from?  
I'm from Spain.  
Where's Izmir?  
I think it's in Turkey.  
It's a nice city.  
I don't know.  
Very good.  
Wow!

Excuse me.  
Are these seats free?  
Are you on vacation?  
We're here on business.  
What's that?  
Have a nice day!  
It's a beautiful city.  
tourists  
dogs  
over there

## 2B 2.27

Who's he?  
How old is he?  
He's very good-looking.  
How are you?  
I'm fine.  
This is Alex.  
That's my bus.  
This is my bus stop.  
What class are you in?  
What's your cell phone number?  
See you later.

a bedroom  
a kitchen  
a yard  
big  
small

## 3A 3.9

Oh no!  
Where's my cell phone?  
Where are my glasses?  
What is it?  
What are they?  
I think it's an ID card.  
I think they're keys.  
What's in your bag?  
I have two credit cards.

## 3B 3.17

How much is this mug?  
How much are these key chains?  
They're twenty dollars.  
A T-shirt, please.  
Is this your cell phone?  
Thank you very much.  
You're welcome.

souvenirs  
here  
there

## 4A 4.12

Come in.  
Be good.  
Let's order pizza.  
on the table  
in my phone  
Mom  
Dad  
a babysitter

What a nice card!  
Can I see?  
I remember.  
maybe

## 4B 4.24

ma'am  
an electric car  
a sports car

easy to park  
perfect  
in her (my, your,...) opinion  
Is the car for you?  
I prefer this red car.  
I love it!  
Come with me.

a museum  
a village  
a motorcycle  
famous

## 5A 5.10

a scientist  
a doctor  
sometimes  
usually

I'm not hungry.  
early  
healthy  
traditional  
important  
different  
favorite

in a café  
at home  
at work

soup  
green tea  
toast  
a lot of (fruit)

## 5B 5.20

a writer  
a taxi driver  
a British (American) company  
a flight  
traffic  
a gate  
in college  
in high school

Do you want fish or pasta?  
How's your pasta?  
I need to go to the restroom.  
What time do we arrive?  
Keep the change.  
Can I see your passport and boarding pass, please?  
What a nice surprise!

## 6A 6.11

What does she do?  
Where does he teach?  
She's a journalist.  
She doesn't wear glasses.  
Her hair's blonde.  
He's married to Lisa.

Great to see you.  
intelligent  
I know, right?  
I love your shoes.

a banker  
customers  
dishes  
a multinational company  
meetings  
Why? Because...

## 6B 6.19

Are you a morning person?  
What time do you get up?  
At eight o'clock.  
He gets up at about 9:30.  
feel tired

on the way to work  
after work  
every morning  
then

a tour guide  
an apartment  
the subway  
an omelet  
It's delicious.

**7A** 7.9

percent  
do the same thing  
fun  
exciting  
at home

a restaurant  
a supermarket  
watch Netflix

it depends  
more or less  
except  
definitely

**7B** 7.20

a movie director  
an actor  
a scene  
kiss

Be quiet.  
Don't cry.  
Don't move.  
Don't say anything.  
I don't remember.  
What about?

next to  
nothing

**8A** 8.12

a driver's license  
a written test  
a driver's test  
a driving instructor

take a test  
pass  
fail  
learn to drive  
start the car

nervous  
Total disaster!

I'm free on Monday.  
Yes, of course.

**8B** 8.18

horrible  
peaceful  
frightened  
alone  
at parties  
concentrate  
very loudly

**9A** 9.9

a living room  
the box office  
traffic  
noise  
jacket  
hear  
honey

half an hour  
towards  
outside

Are you sure?  
Have a good day.  
See you in 20 minutes.

**9B** 9.18

a boss  
internship  
work experience

wash the dishes  
repair something  
serve breakfast  
work hard  
clean a room  
make changes  
make friends

broken  
tired  
surprised

**10A** 10.10

a tourist destination  
mountain peaks  
state parks  
a lake  
ski areas  
a visitor  
a boat trip  
a monster  
a room for tonight  
a great view  
on the fourth floor  
Enjoy your stay.

**10B** 10.18

a robbery  
a bank  
a suspect  
a detective

yesterday  
yesterday afternoon  
last night  
last Friday night

secret  
strong  
together  
a building  
a luxury hotel  
a business person  
celebrate  
jewelry

**11A** 11.8

a designer  
a National Park  
public transportation  
a trumpet  
a sports club  
blueberries  
abroad  
cheaper than

decide  
invite  
offer  
miss  
visit  
pick  
return

**11B** 11.16

an early flight  
an exam  
a noise  
eyes  
an operation  
a soldier  
a special day  
the 21st century

pretty  
shave  
enjoy  
go to the hospital  
ask somebody to marry you  
get married  
have a party

I'm back.  
How was your day?

**12A** 12.12

a platform  
a nice smell  
classical music  
a message  
tickets for a concert  
a concert hall  
a seat  
full  
exchange  
turn on a light  
That's interesting.  
Time to go.

# Regular and irregular verbs

Vowel sounds

## COMMON REGULAR VERBS

answer /'ænsə/	answered /'ænsəd/
arrive /ə'raɪv/	arrived /ə'raɪvd/
ask /æsk/	asked /æskt/
book /buk/	booked /buk/
call /kɔl/	called /kɔld/
carry /'kæri/	carried /'kæri/
change /tʃeɪndʒ/	changed /tʃeɪndʒd/
check in /tʃek 'ɪn/	checked in /tʃek 'ɪn/
clean /kliːn/	cleaned /kliːnd/
close /klaʊz/	closed /klaʊzd/
cook /kuk/	cooked /kukt/
cry /kraɪ/	cried /kraɪd/
decide /dɪ'saɪd/	decided /dɪ'saɪdɪd/
finish /'fɪnɪʃ/	finished /'fɪnɪʃt/
hate /heɪt/	hated /'heɪtɪd/
help /help/	helped /help/
invite /ɪn'vaɪt/	invited /ɪn'vaɪtɪd/
learn /lɜːn/	learned /lɜːnd/
like /laɪk/	liked /laɪkt/
listen /'lɪsn/	listened /'lɪsnd/
live /lɪv/	lived /lɪvd/
look /lʊk/	looked /lʊkt/
love /lʌv/	loved /lʌvd/
miss /mɪs/	missed /mɪst/
move /muːv/	moved /muːvd/
need /niːd/	needed /'niːdɪd/
offer /'ɒfə/	offered /'ɒfəd/
open /'əʊpən/	opened /'əʊpənd/
pack /pæk/	packed /pækt/
paint /peɪnt/	painted /'peɪntɪd/
park /pɑːk/	parked /pɑːkt/
pass /pæs/	passed /pæst/
play /pleɪ/	played /pleɪd/
rain /reɪn/	rained /reɪnd/
relax /rɪ'læks/	relaxed /rɪ'lækst/
rent /rent/	rented /'rentɪd/








snow /snoʊ/	snowed /snoʊd/
start /stɑːt/	started /'stɑːtɪd/
stay /steɪ/	stayed /steɪd/
stop /stɒp/	stopped /stɒpt/
study /'stʌdi/	studied /'stʌdɪd/
talk /tɔːk/	talked /tɔːkt/
travel /'trævl/	traveled /'trævlɪd/
turn /tɜːn/	turned /tɜːnd/
use /juːz/	used /juːzd/
wait /weɪt/	waited /'weɪtɪd/
walk /wɔːk/	walked /wɔːkt/
want /wɒnt/	wanted /'wɒntɪd/
wash /wɒʃ/	washed /wɒʃt/
watch /wɒtʃ/	watched /wɒtʃt/
work /wɜːk/	worked /wɜːkt/

## COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS












be /bi/	was /wɒz/
am /æm/ / is /ɪz/	were /wɜː/
are /ɑː/	bought /bɔːt/
buy /baɪ/	did /dɪd/
do /duː/	got /gɒt/
get /gɛt/	went /wɛnt/
go /gəʊ/	had /həd/
have /hæv/	left /left/
leave /liːv/	said /sed/
say /seɪ/	saw /sɔː/
see /siː/	sent /sent/
send /send/	sat /sæt/
sit /sɪt/	told /təʊld/
tell /tel/	wrote /rəʊt/
write /raɪt/	

# Vowel sounds

# SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also
 tree	ee three meet ea please read e she we	people key piece
 fish	i his six is it big window	English women gym
 ear	eer cheer ere here we're ear near year	cereal
 cat	a bag thanks man black bad that	
 egg	e spell ten seven twenty Mexico	bread friend breakfast
 chair	air airport repair ere where there	their careful
 clock	o not hot stop hospital	what watch want
 saw	al talk walk aw saw draw awful	daughter water bought
 horse	or short important door	four board
 boot	oo too food u* excuse blue ew new	juice two you

\* especially before consonant + e.

	usual spelling	! but also
 bull	u full sugar oo good book look cook	woman could
 tourist	A very unusual sound. euro Europe sure plural	
 up	u umbrella number brush husband but	son brother young
 computer	Many different spellings. /ə/ is always unstressed. umbrella America famous about children	
 bird	er person verb ir thirsty girl ur nurse Turkey	work word world
 owl	ou out house pound sound ow town down	
 phone	o* open close no hello oa coat	window
 car	ar are park start far	heart
 train	a* name late ai email Spain ay day say	eight they great
 boy	oi toilet noise oy boyfriend enjoy	
 bike	i* I hi nice y bye my igh night right	buy

 vowels     vowels followed by /r/     diphthongs

# American English File

Third Edition

Starter

Christina Latham-Koenig  
Clive Oxenden  
Jerry Lambert

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden  
are the original co-authors of  
*English File 1* and *English File 2*

























**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

# Contents


	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
<b>1</b>			
6	<b>A A cappuccino, please</b>	verb <i>be</i> (singular): <i>I</i> and <i>you</i>	numbers 0–10, days of the week, saying goodbye
8	<b>B World music</b>	verb <i>be</i> (singular): <i>he, she, it</i>	countries
10	<b>Practical English Episode 1</b>	checking into a hotel, booking a table	v the classroom P the alphabet
<b>2</b>			
12	<b>A Are you on vacation?</b>	verb <i>be</i> (plural): <i>we, you, they</i>	nationalities
14	<b>B That's my bus!</b>	<i>Wh-</i> and <i>How</i> questions with <i>be</i>	phone numbers, numbers 11–100
16	<b>Review and Check 1&amp;2</b>		understanding numbers
<b>3</b>			
18	<b>A Where are my keys?</b>	singular and plural nouns, <i>a / an</i>	small things
20	<b>B Souvenirs</b>	<i>this / that / these / those</i>	souvenirs
22	<b>Practical English Episode 2</b>	understanding prices, buying lunch	P /ɔr/, /s/, and /k/
<b>4</b>			
24	<b>A Meet the family</b>	possessive adjectives, possessive 's	people and family
26	<b>B The perfect car</b>	adjectives	colors and common adjectives
28	<b>Review and Check 3&amp;4</b>		/z/ and /s/, plural endings
<b>5</b>			
30	<b>A A big breakfast?</b>	simple present ⊕ and ⊖: <i>I, you, we, they</i>	food and drink
32	<b>B A very long flight</b>	simple present ⊕: <i>I, you, we, they</i>	common verb phrases 1
34	<b>Practical English Episode 3</b>	telling the time v the time, saying how you feel	P /ə/, silent consonants
<b>6</b>			
36	<b>A A school reunion</b>	simple present: <i>he, she, it</i>	jobs and places of work
38	<b>B Good morning, goodnight</b>	adverbs of frequency	a typical day
40	<b>Review and Check 5&amp;6</b>		third person -es, sentence rhythm
			/y/ and /yu/, sentence rhythm

# Consonant sounds

# SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also		usual spelling	! but also
 parrot	p paper Peru pp sleep top stopped happy		 thumb	th thing think tenth birthday month Thursday	
 bag	b board British remember job bb hobby		 mother	th the father this their that with	
 key	c color credit card k look take ck back clock	school	 chess	ch children lunch tch watch kitchen t (+ure) picture	
 girl	g go green big blog gg eggs		 jazz	j Japan juice job dge bridge	gym page
 flower	f fifteen Friday wife ph photo phone ff office different		 leg	l lamp listen plan table ll small umbrella	
 vase	v TV very have live seven five	of	 right	r red rice problem street rr terrible married	write wrong
 tie	t time tell start late tt letter butter	liked finished	 witch	w watch twenty word we wh what white where	one
 dog	d did drink study good dd address middle	played cried	 yacht	y yellow your yes you before u music university	
 snake	s sit stand ss glass actress ce/ci nice city	science	 monkey	m museum Monday September come mm summer swimming	
 zebra	z zero Brazil s bags cars husband easy		 nose	n nine never nn men fine beginner dinner	know
 shower	sh shop she ti Spanish finish information reservation (ti + on)	sugar sure	 singer	ng thing single doing going playing wrong	think thank
 television	An unusual sound. usually usual	garage	 house	h hello hi how he have hotel	who

 unvoiced  voiced

 Go online to watch the Sound Bank videos



# OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

198 Madison Avenue  
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2021

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2021

2025 2024 2023 2022 2021

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

## No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 490595 4 STUDENT BOOK (PACK COMPONENT)

ISBN: 978 0 19 490594 7 STUDENT BOOK (PACK)

ISBN: 978 0 19 490586 2 ONLINE PRACTICE ACCESS CARD (PACK COMPONENT)

ISBN: 978 0 19 490607 4 ONLINE PRACTICE (PACK COMPONENT)

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher

The authors would like to thank all the teachers and students around the world whose feedback has helped us to shape American English File.

The authors would also like to thank: all those at Oxford University Press (both in Oxford and around the world) and the design team who have contributed their skills and ideas to producing this course.

Finally very special thanks from Clive to Maria Angeles, Lucia, and Eric, and from Christina to Cristina, for all their support and encouragement. Christina would also like to thank her children Joaquin, Marco, and Krysa for their constant inspiration.

The publisher and authors are very grateful to the following who have provided personal stories and/or photographs: Hannah Donat and Dominic Latham-Koenig

The publisher and authors would also like to thank the following for their invaluable feedback on the materials: Magdalena Matuszewska, Brian Brennan, Krysa Mabbott, Dagmara Lata, Elif Barbaros, Zahra Bliades, Maria McConnell, Rosa Maria Iglesias Traviesas, Yolanda Calza, Ana Kenny Vallejo Guajirra, Patricia Ares

Sources: www.express.co.uk; www.dailymail.co.uk/femail

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Cover: Hobbitt/ Shutterstock, 123RF pp 18 (one umbrella/Tatiana Popova), (four pencils/Lubov Shirokova), (two laptops/zentilia), 19 (E/Hemat Mehta); Alamy pp 9 (World of Discovery), (man playing a buzuki/Rafael Ben-Ari), (man playing an accordion/Ilene Pearlman), (pan flute/YAY Media AS), (Drake/ZUMA Press, Inc.), (Korean drum/JJPEN), 12 (6/Shotshop GmbH), 12 (1/Michael Willis), (2/B Christopher), (3/Richard Sharracks), (4/Martin Lee), 12 (British Tea/Denis Michalov), 19 (A/PhotoInk), 12 (Paul Herbert), 20 (souvenir stand/Manor Photography), 22 (E10 GBP/Nick Fielding), (E10 Euros/Iakov Filimonov), (S10 US/Joie Sohm/Visions of America, LLC), 25 (Tizzy/Simon Stuart-Miller), (map/Digital Diamond), 27 (films/Everett Collection Inc), 34 (smartphone inset in A/Mike Abbott), (wristwatch repeated/musk), 45 (Alien Prometheus/AF archive), (Michael Fassbender/AF archive), 46 (Legionaries/Richardson), 48 (damaged car/Juha Jarvinen), (driving school car/B Christopher), 49 (6/Beacontoxi), (8/Adrian Weston), 53 (Reading Terminal Market/Nikreates), 56 (fixing oven/Andry Popov), 57 (Fat Face Store/f2/picturesbyrobot), 59 (football/Sergio Azenha), (party/Mint Images Limited), (pizza party/LightField Studios Inc), 60 (monster/Lake Champlain/Dale O'Dell), (Lake Champlain/Robert Harding), 62 (AF archive), 64 (suit jacket/Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography), 65 (watching tv/Frank Sanchez), (New Orleans/Andreas von Einsiedel), 69 (boy shaving/Nick Moore), (cleaning shoes/ton koene), (cyclist/Frank Bienenwald), 77 (woman on camel/foto stock), 78 (10 Swatch/Richard Levine), 80 (museum/Alex Serrge), 82 (10 Swatch/Richard Levine), 117 (3/blackwinkle), (5/JL Images), (7/AF archive), (10/View Pictures Ltd), (13/Prisma Bildagentur AG), 121 (Colours 6/Jeffrey Blackler), (Colours 8/Oleksiy Maksymenko Photography), (Adjectives 9/Jeffrey Blackler), 122 (sandwich/Barry Mason), (water/Gerhard Beneken/foc stock), (Butter/Taylor Jordanian), 123 (TV/Picture Partners), (drink tea/sebastianio volponi/MARKKA), (bank/ Image Source Plus), 124 (police officers/John Lord), (restaurant/Andrew Twort), (office/Hufon + Crow/View Pictures Ltd), (school/Art Directors & TRIP), (factory/Jim West), 126 (Travelling 12/Juice Images), (Free Time 2/ Kevin Britland), (Free Time 11/Jeff Morgan 01), (Travelling 6/Terese Loeb Kreuzer), (Travelling 7/Peter Titmus), (Travelling 8/Kouray Srisakandan), (Travelling 9/Jeff Greenberg), 128 (9/Keenetail), (Cousin of David Clarke p

56 (wearing a suit): Hannah Donat p38 (Hannah and Kit); Getty Images pp 8 (2/Onoky - Fabric Lerouge), (Caetano Veloso/Damian Dopacio/AF), (Lila Downs/Omar Vega/LatinContent Editorial), 9 (1/Joey Foley/Getty Images Entertainment), (2/JupiterImages/The Image Bank), (4/Egyptian), (10/Jon Furniss/WireImage), (12/Gustavo Caballero/Getty Images Entertainment), 11 (1/Jered Harris/Getty Images Entertainment), (4/Jim Spellman/WireImage), (Shawn Mendes/Mark Sagliocco), 16 (Khalid/Mark Sagliocco), (2/Mark/Nicolas/McComber/E+), 20 (NY Yankees cap/Robtek), (t-shirt logo/FarbaKolor), 28 (wallet/Creative Crop), 29 (Jeremy Fisher and family/Philip and Karen Smith Collection/Photographer's Choice RF), (Claire and her sisters/Westend61), 30 (Sakura/Tadamasa Taniguchi), (coffee in office/Gregor Schuster), 35 (tired/Christopher Hope-Fitch), (hungry/John Lund/Marc Romaneli/Blend Images), (hot/Cultura/Chris Whitehead), (thirsty/Peter Cade/Ionica), 36 (1/Chris Condon/US PGA Tour), (3/Frederic Lucano/The Image Bank), 42 (Polly and Andrew/Antenna), 46 (JK Rowling/Dave J Hogan/Getty Images Europe), 49 (2/Bloomberg via Getty Images), (3/Digital Vision/Retna), (4/Busca), (5/Oliver Strehle/Lonely Planet Images), (9/Jung Yeon-Je/AFP), 52 (couple on plane/Stop Images/Halfdark), (artist/Caiaimage/Rafal Rodzoch), 57 (1/Gary Alvis), (Sandra/Juanmonino), 60 (inn Hotel/Education Images), (Hotel Room/Jumping Rocks), 64 (shoes/Stuart Burr), 65 (balcony/Ferad Zylkyur/Moment), (Gumbo/Lauri Patterson), 66 (plane/Bloomberg), (restaurant/Emir/Medvedovski), 78 (2/Visual China Group), (3/Giuseppe Cacace/AF), (4/Alex Davies/FilmMagic), (5/Michael Melorsen/National Geographic Magazine), (6/Victor Virgile/Gamma-Rapho), (7/Bloomberg), (9/Jose Perez Geunzede/Gamma-Rapho), 80 (restaurant/Breakfast Sit/Corbis Outright/Getty Images), (82 (reused from p78), 86 (Breakfast/Siraphol Sirichattakul)/EyeEm), 117 (2/Luis Castaneda Inc.), (6/Izzet Kenbar), (Brazil/Peattharn Kongkapech), (Canada/Matteo Colombo), (Chile/Ebba Gregorson Lundius), (China/Dong Wenjie), (England/Fabio Figele/EyeEm), (Japan/DoctorEgg), (Peru/Kelly Cheng Travel Photography), (Saudi Arabia/Katharina Kuntz)/EyeEm), (Turkey/Christy Turner Photography/500px), (Grand Canyon/Dean Fikar), (Vietnam/efired), 120 (People 1/Stepka Pavlova/Moment Open), (People 2/Gen Ume Kita), (Grandparents/Jdomunilo), 121 (Colours 9/Nikada/E+), (Adjectives 2/Michael Melford/Photographer's Choice), (Adjectives 5/Car Culture), (Adjectives 6/Ken Ishii/Getty Images AsiaPac), (fast car/Hirkophoto), (slow car/Johannes Ammann), (dog/Rafael Elias), (cats/Cultura/Zak Kendal), (broken down car/Rhennu Cutler/E+), 124 (journalist/Max Mummy/Indigo), (shop assistant/Bloomberg), (receptionist/Frederic Lucano/The Image Bank), (factory worker/Monte Rakusen/Cultura), (cab driver/JupiterImages/Photolibrary), (department store/Bloomberg), (desk at home/Westend61), (police officers/Kali 9), 126 (Free Time 1/Blend Images/Jose Luis Pelaez Inc), (Free Time 4/Ribert Daly/Ojo Images), (Free Time 5/Morsa Images), (Free Time 8/Stock48), (Travelling 2/Anderson Ross/Blend Images), (Travelling 11/Emma Innocent/Taxi), (Sunglasses/Hero Images), 128 (14/Philippe Lissac/Corbis Documentary), (17/vgaic/E+), (movies/Chris Hondros; Phil Hill @ United National Photographers p 56 (David Clarke working in hotel); Stockphoto p 42 (man washing up/Graham Oliver); Christina Latham-Koenig pp 37; Dominic Latham-Koenig p 66 (Dominic and family), 66 (Dominic's house), 67: Reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press from Oxford Essential Dictionary © Oxford University Press 2012 pp 16 (dictionary); Reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press p 66 cover of SPAT1 (2017) By Jon Burgerman and cover of Mr Bumy's Chocolate Factory (2017) by Elys Dolan; OUP pp 18 (one pencil), 20 (Manhattan Map/Catherine Johnson), (keychain/Catherine Johnson), (Mug/Catherine Johnson), (Teddy Bear/Catherine Johnson), 22 (50 cents), 25 (Bday card/Catherine Johnson), 40 (bread/orange juice), 59 (sandwich), 117 (9), 119 (debit card/Catherine Johnson), (passport/Catherine Johnson), (Phone Charger/Catherine Johnson), 120 (Family 8 & 2), (Family 7-8/Image Source/Getty Images), 121 (Adjectives 15), (Adjectives 16), 129 (suit); OUP/Alamy pp 16 (whiteboard/RT Images), (door/Dmytro Grankin), 122 (50 pence/Images), 35 (cold/XixiXing), 49 (1/Perry van Munster), (7/Es Hiltula), 52 (camping/Stockbroker), 57 (3/Dudley Wood), 59 (coffee/Piotr Szubisz), 64 (suit trousers/Creative Control), 84 (couple/Elise Images), (opening time/Jack Carey), 86 (family), 116 (Sean Gladwell), 117 (4/Jan Tadeusz), (8/Sean Pavone), 120 (People 6/Image Source), (Family 3-6/D. Hurst), (Family 11-12/Ojo Images Ltd), 121 (Colours 3/Marek Kosmal), (Colours 7/Nalinratana Phiyalinmat), (Colours 10/Artem Merzlenko), (Adjectives 10/Picturebank), 122 (yoghurt/FoodFood), (milk/Valentyn Volkov), (orange juice/ImageBroker), (man drinking/Mint Images), 123 (flat/UpperCut Images), (breakfast/UpperCut Images), (newspaper/Juice Images), (speak English/Andres Rodriguez), (want coffee/Image Source Plus), (polystyrene cup/Judith Collins), (classes/Cathy Topping), 124 (nurse/OJO Images Ltd), (hospital/Zoonar GmbH), 126 (Travelling 10/Hybrid Images Image Source Salsal), OUP/Corbis pp 17 (Bianca), 122 (vegetables), 123 (fast food); OUP/DPA p122 (tea); OUP/Photodisc p 22 (cent coins); OUP/Photolibrary pp 8 (1), 22 (25 cents), 59 (coke), 87, 122 (eggs), 124 (doctor); OUP/ Shutterstock pp 18 (picture frame/pixelheadphoto digitalskillet), 27 (houses/Ewelina Wachala), 41 (Japanese food/bonshan), 119 (newspaper), 122 (salad/Kuttelavserova Stuchelova); REX/Shutterstock pp 19 (D/Pablo Martinez Monsivais/AF), 45 (Charlize Theron/Scott Free Prod/20th Century Fox/Kobal), (Sigourney Weaver/Denis Cameron), (Alien (original)/20th Century Fox/Kobal), (Alien Covenant/Rob Latour), 46 (The Lord of the Rings/ New Line/Kobal), (Star Wars/Lucasfilm/Fox/Kobal), 121 (Adjectives 7/Image Broker), (Adjectives 8/John O'Reilly), 128 (18 still from 'House' on TV screen/Fox-TV/Kobal), Shutterstock pp 8 (3/bezikus), (back view couple/ Kamenitskiy konstantin), (wall/rangzz), (pavement/donatas1205), (poster graphic/ balabolka), 9 (6/Vershchagin Dmitry), (8/Scharfsinn), (9/Lev Kropotov), 10 (1/Jordan Tan), (2/chrisdorney), (3/Marija Stojkovic), (4/Claudio Divizia), (5/Stephen Coburn), (7/Sergio Monti Photography), (8/Jack Jelly), 13 (2/Waldemar Dabrowski), (3/Dawid Lech), (Samsung phone/Nemanja Zotovic), 16 (chair/Just2shutter), 17 (Jacek/LightField Studios), 18 (book/ Amerol), (semi-closed laptop/Peter Kotoff), (phone/RikoBest), (smiling woman/Kim Diaz), (open laptop/Nata-Lia), (three umbrellas/Anton-Burakov), 19 (BA/istock Productions), (C/stockfour), (1/matuszowski), (2/Briance stock), (3/Nitikor Poonisri), (4/David Baumgartner), (5/alexalex), (6/Kozarskiy), (7/ jakraphong Photography), (8/Claudio Divizia), (9/mrkornflakes), (10/ akiyoko), (11/aPhoenixPhotographer), 20 (sunglasses/exopixel), (postcard/ Tupungato), (Sunglasses/Shutterstock), (t-shirt/Africa Studio), 24 (boy/list), (girl/list), (man/list), (woman/list), 26 (car logos/Rose Carson), (Hyundai logo/ IgorGoloviov), (Geely logo/ Piotr Swat), (Seat logo/Mdogan), (blue smart car/Grzegorz Czapski), 27 (cities/segawa7), (food/Onchira Wongsiri), (restaurants/SPHOTO), (books/Billion Photos), (dogs/InBetweenTheBlinks), (photos/becky), 28 (umbrella/burne11), (credit card/yabucol), (key/Winai Tepsuttinun), (cap/Etaphop photo), (teddy/Num LPPhoto), 30 (sandwich/gowhstock), (eggs/Africa Studio), (tea/M. Unal Ozmen), (cheese/Natricka), (orange juice/Africa Studio), (Marta/Kudryashova Aila), (Paulo/LightField Studios), (Rob/Azovtsev Maksym), (coffee cup/3DMAVR), (tea mug/Evlakhov Valeriy), 34 (clock graphic 1-6/Lightkite), 36 (2/wavebreakmedia), 37 (Antonio/David Tadevosian), (Charlotte/Africa Studio), (nurse/Monkey Business Images), (hospital background/Jochaim Heng), 38 (avocado/NatashaPhoto), (bath/stockolutions), 40 (water/Gyafatol), (sugar/Sea Wave), (milk/Jean Le-Bon), (cheese), 42 (woman watching tv/antonioidaz), (couple/ mentadgi), 46 (key/boar/Guagar), (Fifth Avenue/Tono Balaguer), 49 (speed the limit sign/Karles Lewis), 50 (1/Mima Antic), (2/Erin Cadigan), (3/CKP1001), (Isabella/Twin Sails), (William/VGstockstudio), (Angie/Faras Ataman), (Daniel/Dean Drobot), (Adriana/De Repente), (Luke/Dean Drobot), 52 (cycling/Jupko Smokovski), (cooking/Robert Kneschke), (man with suitcase/ leolintang), (jogging/Dean Drobot), (swimming/Suzanne Tucker), 57 (2/ Karkas), (4/Chiyacat), (5/Mariyana M), (Rue 21/Jonathan Weiss), (young woman/Aaron Amat), 59 (salad/Christian Jung), (party/Monkey Business Images), (concert/melis), 60 (Vermont Map/AridOcean), 61 (view through the window/Alina Silvezviciute), 63 (digital clock 7 am and 10am/ createdOR76), (digital clock 4 pm and 6:30pm/Macrovector), (wristwatch/ MarySam), (Jason's wife/Spectral-Design), 64 (dress/Karkas), (jacket/mates), (shirt/Ozaichin), (skirt/Karkas), (trousers/Elnur), (hat/Slavko Sereada), 65 (Jenna/Wayhome studio), (cup/e/ Wayhome studio), (tapas/Andreas Saidavs), (watching tv female legs only/MarinaP), (Football/Jamie Lamor Thompson), 66 (Lego helicopter/cjmacr), (mountain landscape on booking screen/Dave Allen Photography), (suitscases/Laborant), 68 (hallway background/Africa Studio), 69 (sky dive/Sky Antonio), (wedding/ TVASHstudio), 75 (dice/Geardst), 77 (Petra/liseykina), 78 (1/Ratthaphong

Ekariyasap), (8/Brent Hofacker), (Mt. Fuji/Jagapong Saenphab), (Machu Piccu/Ivan off), (Hyundai car/ Dmitry Eagle Orlov), (Pepsi & Coke can/ Mejni Neskah), 79 (clocks/Lightkite), 81 (charger/Passakorn sakulphan), (purse/A N D A), (iPad/mixki), (Canadian passports/dennizni), 82 (1/Ratthaphong Ekariyasap), (8), (10/Rolexlist), 83 (clocks/Lightkite), 85 (surprised people/Dima Sidelnikov), 117 (1/Mark Schwettmann), (1/vvov), (12/Sean Pavone), (14/Luciano Mortuaj), (15/Criteribzi), (Argentina/Carolina Bello), (Korea/ Terachatt paibung), (Mexico/Patryk Kosmider), 119 (Hungarian passport/Abihatsira Isaac), (credit card/Popular Business), 120 (People 3/Nadino), (People 4/Imagebroker), (People 5/Andrew), (Family 9-10/wavebreakmedia), 121 (Colours 1/Elnur), (Colours 2/Pabkov), (Colours 4/Yganko), (Colours 5/Eygen3dstudio), (Adjectives 1/pics721), (Adjectives 3/jannoon028), (Adjectives 4/SmileStudio), (Adjectives 11/Natasha Kramskaya), (Adjectives 12/Yuralais Albert), (Adjectives 13/Panopte), (Adjectives 14/psirob), 122 (fish/HLPhoto), (meat/Valentyn Vokov), (pasta/chrisbrignell), (rice/leungchopan), (potatoes/Isak55), (fruit/Africa Studio), (bread/Tim UR), (butter/Photographe.e.u), (cheese/Tim UR), (sugar/ GayvoronskayaYana), (cereal/Oliver Hoffmann), (chocolate/Yeko Photo Studio), (coffee/Artem and Olga Saepgin), (wine/jenetstan), (beer/Tarasjuk Igor), (woman eating/159877448), 123 (woman w/ coffee/Kings), 124 (teacher/wavebreakmedia), (waiters/Dmitry Kalinovsk), (street with police/ Tourdourmond Photography), 126 (Free Time 3/Tono Balaguer), (Free Time 6/Andrew), (Free Time 7/Galyna Andruskh), (Satyrenko), (Free Time 10/ Lucky Business), (Free Time 12/Ter Virbickis), (Travelling 4/Robert Kneschke), (Travelling 5/Cookie Studio), (gym/jnd3000), (tennis/George Rudyk), (buying souvenirs/Denis Koryakin), 124 (1/ESB Professional), (2/ Kiselev Andrey Valerievich), (3/merzie), (4/Cultura Motion), (5/ AM NIKOM), (6/Aksum Igor), (8/Syda Productions), (10/David Tadevosian), (11/Andri Kobryn), (12/nd3000), (13/Minerva Studio), (15/brang), (16/Halfpoint), (18 people watching TV/wavebreakmedia), (yogya/David Tadevosian), 129 (cap/ Ukki Studio), (hat/ravistrow), (coat/elenovsk), (dress/Vlad Teodor), (jacket/ Peter Versnel), (jeans/gresei), (shirt/Elnur), (green shoes/Magdalenka Wielobow), (skirt/Karkas), (socks/Constantinos2), (sweater/Valentyn Vokov), (T-shirt/fashal), (trainers/BornRichjapan), (grey trousers/demidoff), (shorts/windu).

Pronunciation chart artwork by: Ellis Nadler

Illustrations by: Amber Day/ Illustration Day pp 12, 13, 36; Jo Bird/Jelly London: p44 (illustrated background), 70-71 (map), 81, 85; Stephen Collins pp 125, 130; Clementine Hope/NB/ Illustration Day pp 14 (illustrated background), 54, 55, 61 (illustrated background), 80 & 84 (bedrooms); Laura Perez/Anna Goodson Illustration Agency pp 32-33, 64; Claire Rollet p 21 (illustrated background); Jon Swift/NB Illustration Ltd. p26 (illustrated background); John Haslam pp 80 & 84 ('the same or different'), 92, 93, 94, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 104, 106, 109, 110, 115, 118, 126

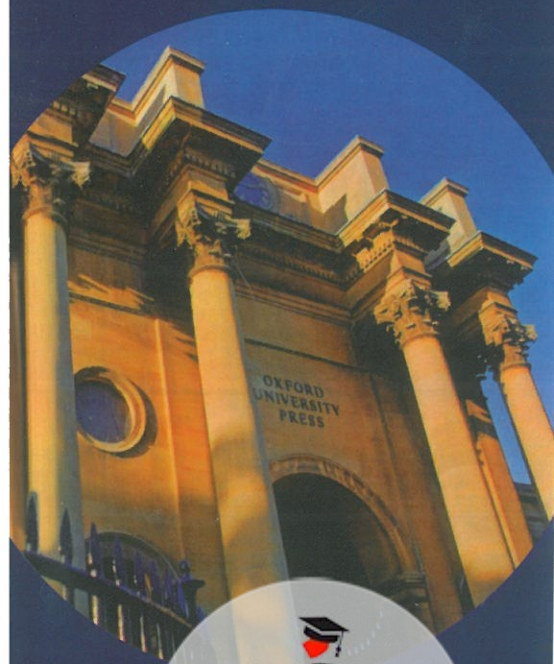
Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden pp 24, 25 (family); 44, 48-49 (Anna and instructor), 68 (people), 72, 73 (having coffee); MB Studios pp 6, 7, 14 (people), 20 (stallholder), 21 (people), 25 (Jane, Marina and card), 26 (people), 30 (breakfasts for Marta, Paulo and Sakura), 44 (people), 61 (ball and remote control), 65 (book covers), 81, 86 (breakfast), 119 (Hungarian ID card), 123 (study), 126 (Travelling 1), 126 (Travelling 3), 128 (teating out 6); Oxford University Press video stills pp 11, 15, 20 (stall holder), 17 (vox pops), 22 (menu), 23, 27 (Beaulieu), 29 (vox pops), 30 (Rob and Alan), 35 (Jenny and Amy), 39, 41 (vox pops), 47, 51, 53 (vox pops), 58, 59 (meeting a friend), 63 (hotel), 65 (vox pops), 71, 73 (in car on concert, Royal Albert Hall), 77 (vox pops).

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologize for any apparent infringement of copyright and if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest opportunity.

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.



دهخدا

موسسه زبان دهخدا  
dekhodaedu.com

OXFORD  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

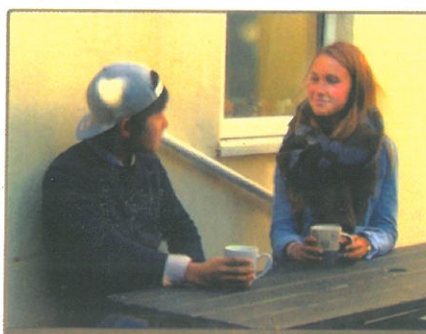
# American English File

gets you talking

Third Edition

90% of teachers who took part in an Oxford Impact study found that *American English File* improves students' speaking skills.

- Engage with **uniquely motivating texts, topics, and tasks** that make you want to speak.
- Build your confidence to communicate with a proven balance of **Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills development** in every File.
- Extend learning outside class with **NEW Online Practice**.



#### Video in every File

Learn language and develop skills with Practical English, NEW documentaries and dramas, and NEW authentic street interviews.

#### FOR STUDENTS

- Student Book with Online Practice
- Multi-Packs with Online Practice
- Workbook
- English File Say It app for pronunciation practice

#### americanenglishfileonline.com

Look again at language from the lesson, do extra practice, improve your speaking with interactive video and the Sound Bank video, and check your progress.

#### FOR TEACHERS

- Teacher's Guide with Teacher Resource Center
- Classroom Presentation Tool
- Class DVD
- Class Audio CDs



English Sounds Pronunciation Chart based on an original idea and design by Paul Seligson and Carmen Dolz.



dekhodaedu.com